

User Manual for glossaries.sty v4.05

Nicola L.C. Talbot

<http://www.dickimaw-books.com/>

2014-03-11

Abstract

The glossaries package provides a means to define terms or acronyms or symbols that can be referenced within your document. Sorted lists with collated **locations** can be generated using a supplementary **indexing application**.

Documents have various styles when it comes to presenting glossaries or lists of terms or notation. People have their own preferences and to a large extent this is determined by the kind of information that needs to go in the glossary. They may just have symbols with terse descriptions or they may have long technical words with complicated descriptions. The glossaries package is flexible enough to accommodate such varied requirements, but this flexibility comes at a price: a big manual.

☺ If you're freaking out at the size of this manual, start with `glossariesbegin.pdf` ("The glossaries package: a guide for beginnners"). You should find it in the same directory as this document or try `texdoc glossariesbegin.pdf`. Once you've got to grips with the basics, then come back to this manual to find out how to adjust the settings.

The glossaries bundle comes with the following documentation:

glossariesbegin.pdf If you are a complete beginner, start with "The glossaries package: a guide for beginners".

glossary2glossaries.pdf If you are moving over from the obsolete glossary package, read "Upgrading from the glossary package to the glossaries package".

glossaries-user.pdf This document is the main user guide for the glossaries package.

mfirstuc-manual.pdf The commands provided by the mfirstuc package are briefly described in “mfirstuc.sty: uppercasing first letter”.

glossaries-code.pdf Advanced users wishing to know more about the inner workings of all the packages provided in the glossaries bundle should read “Documented Code for glossaries v4.05”. This includes the documented code for the mfirstuc package.

INSTALL Installation instructions.

CHANGES Change log.

README Package summary.

If you use hyperref and glossaries, you must load hyperref *first*. Similarly the doc package must also be loaded before glossaries. (If doc is loaded, the file extensions for the default main glossary are changed to gls2, glo2 and .glg2 to avoid conflict with doc’s changes glossary.)

If you are using hyperref, it’s best to use pdf_latex rather than latex (DVI format) as pdf_latex deals with hyperlinks much better. If you use the DVI format, you will encounter problems where you have long hyperlinks or hyperlinks in subscripts or superscripts. This is an issue with the DVI format not with glossaries.

Other documents that describe using the glossaries package include: [Using LaTeX to Write a PhD Thesis](#) and [Glossaries, Nomenclature, Lists of Symbols and Acronyms](#).

Contents

Glossary	8
1 Introduction	11
1.1 Sample Documents	15
1.2 Multi-Lingual Support	28
1.2.1 Changing the Fixed Names	28
1.3 Generating the Associated Glossary Files	32
1.3.1 Using the makeglossaries Perl Script	35
1.3.2 Using xindy explicitly (Option 3)	36
1.3.3 Using makeindex explicitly (Option 2)	38
1.3.4 Note to Front-End and Script Developers	38
2 Package Options	41
2.1 General Options	41
2.2 Sectioning, Headings and TOC Options	45
2.3 Glossary Appearance Options	48
2.4 Sorting Options	51
2.5 Acronym Options	56
2.5.1 Deprecated Acronym Style Options	58
2.6 Other Options	60
2.7 Setting Options After the Package is Loaded	62
3 Setting Up	64
3.1 Option 1	64
3.2 Options 2 and 3	64
4 Defining Glossary Entries	66
4.1 Plurals	71
4.2 Other Grammatical Constructs	72
4.3 Additional Keys	73
4.4 Expansion	75
4.5 Sub-Entries	76
4.5.1 Hierarchical Categories	77
4.5.2 Homographs	77
4.6 Loading Entries From a File	78
4.7 Moving Entries to Another Glossary	81

Contents

4.8 Drawbacks With Defining Entries in the Document Environment	81
4.8.1 Technical Issues	82
4.8.2 Good Practice Issues	82
5 Number lists	84
6 Links to Glossary Entries	87
6.1 Changing the format of the link text	98
6.2 Enabling and disabling hyperlinks to glossary entries .	102
7 Adding an Entry to the Glossary Without Generating Text	105
8 Cross-Referencing Entries	107
8.1 Customising Cross-reference Text	109
9 Using Glossary Terms Without Links	111
10 Displaying a glossary	117
11 Xindy (Option 3)	121
11.1 Language and Encodings	122
11.2 Locations and Number lists	123
11.3 Glossary Groups	127
12 Defining New Glossaries	128
13 Acronyms	130
13.1 Changing the Acronym Style	135
13.1.1 Predefined Acronym Styles	136
13.1.2 Defining A Custom Acronym Style	140
13.2 Displaying the List of Acronyms	148
13.3 Upgrading From the glossary Package	149
14 Unsetting and Resetting Entry Flags	151
15 Glossary Styles	154
15.1 Predefined Styles	154
15.1.1 List Styles	156
15.1.2 Longtable Styles	158
15.1.3 Longtable Styles (Ragged Right)	160
15.1.4 Supertabular Styles	161
15.1.5 Supertabular Styles (Ragged Right)	163
15.1.6 Tree-Like Styles	165
15.1.7 Multicols Style	166

Contents

15.1.8 In-Line Style	167
15.2 Defining your own glossary style	168
16 Utilities	175
17 Prefixes or Determiners	178
18 Accessibility Support	183
19 Troubleshooting	185
Index	190

List of Examples

1	Mixing Alphabetical and Order of Definition Sorting . . .	53
2	Customizing Standard Sort (Options 2 or 3)	54
3	Defining Custom Keys	74
4	Hierarchical Categories—Greek and Roman Mathe- matical Symbols	77
5	Loading Entries from Another File	79
6	Custom Entry Display in Text	100
7	Custom Format for Particular Glossary	101
8	First Use With Hyperlinked Footnote Description . . .	102
9	Suppressing Hyperlinks on First Use Just For Acronyms	103
10	Only Hyperlink in Text Mode Not Math Mode	103
11	Dual Entries	106
12	Switch to Two Column Mode for Glossary	119
13	Changing the Font Used to Display Entry Names in the Glossary	120
14	Custom Font for Displaying a Location	123
15	Custom Numbering System for Locations	124
16	Locations as Words not Digits	125
17	Defining an Acronym	131
18	Adapting a Predefined Acronym Style	139
19	Defining a Custom Acronym Style	142
20	Creating a completely new style	172
21	Creating a new glossary style based on an existing style	173
22	Example: creating a glossary style that uses the user1, ..., user6 keys	174
23	Defining Determiners	178
24	Using Prefixes	180
25	Adding Determiner to Glossary Style	182

List of Tables

1.1	Glossary Options: Pros and Cons	16
1.2	Supported Languages	30
1.3	Customised Text	31
1.4	Commands and package options that have no effect when using xindy or makeindex explicitly	35
4.1	Key to Field Mappings	76
6.1	Predefined Hyperlinked Location Formats	91
13.1	Synonyms provided by the package option shortcuts . .	134
13.2	The effect of using xspace	150
15.1	Glossary Styles	155
15.2	Multicolumn Styles	167

Glossary

This glossary style was setup using:

```
\usepackage[xindy,  
            nonumberlist,  
            toc,  
            nopostdot,  
            style=altlist,  
            nogroupskip]{glossaries}  
  
\glsnoexpandfields  
\renewcommand*{\glsseeformat}[3][\seename]{%  
(\xmakefirstuc{#1} \glsseelist{#2}.)}
```

Command Line Interface (CLI)

An application that doesn't have a graphical user interface. That is, an application that doesn't have any windows, buttons or menus and can be run in a **command prompt or terminal**.

Entry location

The location of the entry in the document. This defaults to the page number on which the entry appears. An entry may have multiple locations.

Extended Latin Alphabet

An alphabet consisting of **Latin characters** and **extended Latin characters**.

Extended Latin Character

A character that's created by combining **Latin characters** to form ligatures (e.g. æ) or by applying diacritical marks to a Latin character or characters (e.g. á or ø). See also **non-Latin character**.

First use

The first time a glossary entry is used (from the start of the document or after a reset) with one of the following commands: `\gls`, `\Gls`, `\GLS`, `\glspl`, `\Glspl`, `\GLSpl` or `\glsdisp`. (See **first use flag** & **first use text**.)

First use flag

A conditional that determines whether or not the entry has been used according to the rules of **first use**. Commands to unset or reset this conditional are described in Section 14.

First use text

The text that is displayed on **first use**, which is governed by the `first` and `firstplural` keys of `\newglossaryentry`. (May be overridden by `\glsdisp`.)

Indexing application

An application (piece of software) separate from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ / $\text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ that collates and sorts information that has an associated page reference. Generally the information is an index entry but in this case the information is a glossary entry. There are two main indexing applications that are used with $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$: `makeindex` and `xindy`. These are both **command line interface (CLI)** applications.

Latin Alphabet

The alphabet consisting of **Latin characters**. See also **extended Latin alphabet**.

Latin Character

One of the letters `a`, ..., `z`, `A`, ..., `Z`. See also **extended Latin character**.

Link text

The text produced by commands such as `\gls`. It may or may not be a hyperlink to the glossary.

makeglossaries

A custom designed Perl script interface to `xindy` and `makeindex` provided with the `glossaries` package.

makeglossariesgui

A Java GUI alternative to `makeglossaries` that also provides diagnostic tools. Available separately on CTAN.

makeindex

An **indexing application**.

Non-Latin Alphabet

An alphabet consisting of **non-Latin characters**.

Non-Latin Character

An **extended Latin character** or a character from a non-Latin alphabet.

Number list

A list of **entry locations** (also called a location list). The number list can be suppressed using the `nonumberlist` package option.

Sanitize

Converts command names into character sequences. That is, a command called, say, `\foo`, is converted into the sequence of characters: `\, f, o, o`. Depending on the font, the backslash character may appear as a dash when used in the main document text, so `\foo` will appear as: —foo.

Earlier versions of glossaries used this technique to write information to the files used by the indexing applications to prevent problems caused by fragile commands. Now, this is only used for the sort key.

Standard L^AT_EX Extended Latin Character

An **extended Latin character** that can be created by a core L^AT_EX command, such as `\o` (ø) or `\'e` (é). That is, the character can be produced without the need to load a particular package.

xindy

A flexible **indexing application** with multilingual support written in Perl.

1 Introduction

The glossaries package is provided to assist generating lists of terms, symbols or abbreviations (glossaries). It has a certain amount of flexibility, allowing the user to customize the format of the glossary and define multiple glossaries. It also supports glossary styles that include symbols (in addition to a name and description) for glossary entries. There is provision for loading a database of glossary terms. Only those terms used¹ in the document will be added to the glossary.

This package replaces the glossary package which is now obsolete. Please see the document “Upgrading from the glossary package to the glossaries package” ([glossary2glossaries.pdf](#)) for assistance in upgrading.

One of the strengths of this package is its flexibility, however the drawback of this is the necessity of having a large manual that can cover all the various settings. If you are daunted by the size of the manual, try starting off with the much shorter guide for beginners ([glossariesbegin.pdf](#)).

There’s a common misconception that you have to have Perl installed in order to use the glossaries package. Perl is *not* a requirement but it does increase the available options, particularly if you use an **extended Latin alphabet** or a **non-Latin alphabet**.

The basic idea behind the glossaries package is that you first define your entries (terms, symbols or abbreviations). Then you can reference these within your document (like `\cite` or `\ref`). You can also, optionally, display a list of the entries you have referenced in your document (the glossary). This last part, displaying the glossary is the part that most new users find difficult. There are three options:

Option 1:

This is the simplest option but it’s slow and if you want a sorted list, it doesn’t work well for **extended Latin alphabets** or **non-**

¹That is, if the term has been referenced using any of the commands described in Section 6 and Section 7 or via `\glssee` (or the `see` key) or commands such as `\acrshort`.

1 Introduction

Latin alphabets. However, if you use the `sanitizesort=false` package option (the default for Option 1) then the **standard L^AT_EX accent commands** will be ignored, so if an entry’s name is set to `{\’e}lite` then the sort will default to `elite` if `sanitizesort=false` is used and will default to `\’elite` if `sanitizesort=true` is used.

1. Add `\makenoidxglossaries` to your preamble (before you start defining your entries, as described in Section 4).
2. Put

```
\printnoidxglossary
```

where you want your list of entries to appear (described in Section 10).

3. Run L^AT_EX twice on your document. (As you would do to make a table of contents appear.) For example, click twice on the “typeset” or “build” or “PDFL^AT_EX” button in your editor.

Option 2:

This option uses a **command line interface (CLI)** application called `makeindex` to sort the entries. This application comes with all modern T_EX distributions, but it’s hard-coded for the non-extended **Latin alphabet**, so it doesn’t work well for **extended Latin alphabets** or **non-Latin alphabets**. This process involves making L^AT_EX write the glossary information to a temporary file which `makeindex` reads. Then `makeindex` writes a new file containing the code to typeset the glossary. L^AT_EX then reads this file in on the next run.

1. Add `\makeglossaries` to your preamble (before you start defining your entries, as described in Section 4).
2. Put

```
\printglossary
```

where you want your list of entries to appear (described in Section 10).

3. Run L^AT_EX on your document. This creates files with the extensions `.glo` and `.ist` (for example, if your L^AT_EX document is called `myDoc.tex`, then you’ll have two extra files called `myDoc.glo` and `myDoc.ist`). If you look at your

1 Introduction

document at this point, you won't see the glossary as it hasn't been created yet.

4. Run `makeindex` with the `.glo` file as the input file and the `.ist` file as the style so that it creates an output file with the extension `.gls`. If you have access to a terminal or a command prompt (for example, the MSDOS command prompt for Windows users or the bash console for Unix-like users) then you need to run the command:

```
makeindex -s myDoc.ist -o myDoc.gls myDoc.glo
```

(Replace `myDoc` with the base name of your \LaTeX document file. Avoid spaces in the file name.) If you don't know how to use the command prompt, then you can probably access `makeindex` via your text editor, but each editor has a different method of doing this, so I can't give a general description. You will have to check your editor's manual.

The default sort is word order ("sea lion" comes before "seal"). If you want letter ordering you need to add the `-l` switch:

```
makeindex -l -s myDoc.ist -o myDoc.gls myDoc.glo
```

(See Section 1.3.3 for further details on using `makeindex` explicitly.)

5. Once you have successfully completed the previous step, you can now run \LaTeX on your document again.

This is the default option (although you still need to use `\makeglossaries` to ensure the glossary files are created).

Option 3:

This option uses a CLI application called `xindy` to sort the entries. This application is more flexible than `makeindex` and is able to sort **extended Latin alphabets** or **non-Latin alphabets**. The `xindy` application comes with \TeX Live but not with $\text{MiK}\text{\TeX}$. Since `xindy` is a Perl script, if you are using $\text{MiK}\text{\TeX}$ you will not only need to install `xindy`, you will also need to install Perl. In a similar way to **Option 2**, this option involves making \LaTeX write the glossary information to a temporary file which `xindy` reads. Then `xindy` writes a new file containing the code to typeset the glossary. \LaTeX then reads this file in on the next run.

1. Add the `xindy` option to the `glossaries` package option list:

```
\usepackage[xindy]{glossaries}
```

1 Introduction

2. Add `\makeglossaries` to your preamble (before you start defining your entries, as described in Section 4).
3. Run \LaTeX on your document. This creates files with the extensions `.glo` and `.xdy` (for example, if your \LaTeX document is called `myDoc.tex`, then you'll have two extra files called `myDoc.glo` and `myDoc.xdy`). If you look at your document at this point, you won't see the glossary as it hasn't been created yet.
4. Run `xindy` with the `.glo` file as the input file and the `.xdy` file as a module so that it creates an output file with the extension `.gls`. You also need to set the language name and input encoding. If you have access to a terminal or a command prompt (for example, the MSDOS command prompt for Windows users or the bash console for Unix-like users) then you need to run the command (all on one line):

```
xindy -L english -C utf8 -I xindy -M myDoc  
-t myDoc.glg -o myDoc.gls myDoc.glo
```

(Replace `myDoc` with the base name of your \LaTeX document file. Avoid spaces in the file name. If necessary, also replace `english` with the name of your language and `utf8` with your input encoding.) If you don't know how to use the command prompt, then you can probably access `xindy` via your text editor, but each editor has a different method of doing this, so I can't give a general description. You will have to check your editor's manual.

The default sort is word order ("sea lion" comes before "seal"). If you want letter ordering you need to add the `order=letter` package option:

```
\usepackage[xindy,order=letter]{glossaries}
```

(See Section 1.3.2 for further details on using `xindy` explicitly.)

5. Once you have successfully completed the previous step, you can now run \LaTeX on your document again.

For Options 2 and 3, it can be difficult to remember all the parameters required for `makeindex` or `xindy`, so the `glossaries` package provides a script called `makeglossaries` that reads the `.aux` file to determine what settings you have used and will then run `makeindex` or `xindy`. Again, this is a command line application and can be run in a terminal or command prompt. For example, if your \LaTeX document is in the file `myDoc.tex`, then run:

1 Introduction

```
makeglossaries myDoc
```

(Replace `myDoc` with the base name of your \LaTeX document file. Avoid spaces in the file name.) This is described in more detail in Section 1.3.

The `.gls` and `.glo` are temporary files created to help build your document. You should not edit or explicitly input them. However, you may need to delete them if something goes wrong and you need to do a fresh build.

An overview of these three options is given in table 1.1.

This document uses the `glossaries` package. For example, when viewing the PDF version of this document in a hyperlinked-enabled PDF viewer (such as Adobe Reader or Okular) if you click on the word “`xindy`” you’ll be taken to the entry in the glossary where there’s a brief description of the term “`xindy`”.

The remainder of this introductory section covers the following:

- Section 1.1 lists the sample documents provided with this package.
- Section 1.2 provides information for users who wish to write in a language other than English.
- Section 1.3 describes how to use an **indexing application** to create the sorted glossaries for your document (Options 2 or 3).

1.1 Sample Documents

The `glossaries` package is provided with some sample documents that illustrate the various functions. These should be located in the `samples` subdirectory (folder) of the `glossaries` documentation directory. This location varies according to your operating system and \TeX distribution. You can use `texdoc` to locate the main `glossaries` documentation. For example, in a **terminal or command prompt**, type:

```
texdoc -l glossaries
```

This should display a list of all the files in the `glossaries` documentation directory with their full pathnames.

If you can’t find the sample files on your computer, they are also available from your nearest CTAN mirror at <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/glossaries/samples/>.

Table 1.1: Glossary Options: Pros and Cons

	Option 1	Option 2	Option 3
Requires an external application?	✗	✓	✓
Requires Perl?	✗	✗	✓
Can sort extended Latin alphabets or non-Latin alphabets ?	✗ [†]	✗	✓
Efficient sort algorithm?	✗	✓	✓
Can use a different sort algorithm for each glossary?	✓	✗	✗
Can form ranges in the location lists?	✗	✓	✓
Can have non-standard locations in the location lists?	✓	✗	✓
Maximum hierarchical depth	Unlimited	3	Unlimited
<code>\glsdisplaynumberlist</code> reliable?	✓	✗	✗
<code>\newglossaryentry</code> restricted to preamble?	✓	✗	✗
Requires additional write registers?	✗	✓	✓
Default value of <code>sanitizesort</code> package option	false	true	true

[†] Strips standard \LaTeX accents (that is, accents generated by core \LaTeX commands) so, for example, `\AA` is treated the same as `A`.

1 Introduction

The sample documents are as follows²:

minimalgls.tex This document is a minimal working example. You can test your installation using this file. To create the complete document you will need to do the following steps:

1. Run `minimalgls.tex` through \LaTeX either by typing

```
latex minimalgls
```

in a terminal or by using the relevant button or menu item in your text editor or front-end. This will create the required associated files but you will not see the glossary. If you use \PDFLaTeX you will also get warnings about non-existent references that look something like:

```
pdfTeX warning (dest): name{glo:aca} has been
referenced but does not exist,
replaced by a fixed one
```

These warnings may be ignored on the first run.

If you get a `Missing \begin{document}` error, then it's most likely that your version of `xkeyval` is out of date. Check the log file for a warning of that nature. If this is the case, you will need to update the `xkeyval` package.

2. Run `makeglossaries` on the document (Section 1.3). This can be done on a terminal either by typing

```
makeglossaries minimalgls
```

or by typing

```
perl makeglossaries minimalgls
```

If your system doesn't recognise the command `perl` then it's likely you don't have Perl installed. In which case you will need to use `makeindex` directly. You can do this in a terminal by typing (all on one line):

```
makeindex -s minimalgls.ist -t minimalgls.glg
-o minimalgls.gls minimalgls.glo
```

²Note that although I've written `latex` in this section, it's better to use `pdflatex`, where possible, for the reasons given [earlier](#).

1 Introduction

(See Section 1.3.3 for further details on using `makeindex` explicitly.)

Note that if you need to specify the full path and the path contains spaces, you will need to delimit the file names with the double-quote character.

3. Run `minimalgls.tex` through L^AT_EX again (as step 1)

You should now have a complete document. The number following each entry in the glossary is the location number. By default, this is the page number where the entry was referenced.

sample-noidx.tex This document illustrates how to use the `glossaries` package without an external `indexing application` (Option 1). To create the complete document, you need to do:

```
latex sample-noidx
latex sample-noidx
```

sample-noidx-utf8.tex As the previous example, except that it uses the `inputenc` package. To create the complete document, you need to do:

```
latex sample-noidx-utf8
latex sample-noidx-utf8
```

sample4col.tex This document illustrates a four column glossary where the entries have a symbol in addition to the name and description. To create the complete document, you need to do:

```
latex sample4col
makeglossaries sample4col
latex sample4col
```

As before, if you don't have Perl installed, you will need to use `makeindex` directly instead of using `makeglossaries`. The vertical gap between entries is the gap created at the start of each group. This can be suppressed using the `nogroupskip` package option.

1 Introduction

sampleAcr.tex This document has some sample acronyms. It also adds the glossary to the table of contents, so an extra run through L^AT_EX is required to ensure the document is up to date:

```
latex sampleAcr
makeglossaries sampleAcr
latex sampleAcr
latex sampleAcr
```

sampleAcrDesc.tex This is similar to the previous example, except that the acronyms have an associated description. As with the previous example, the glossary is added to the table of contents, so an extra run through L^AT_EX is required:

```
latex sampleAcrDesc
makeglossaries sampleAcrDesc
latex sampleAcrDesc
latex sampleAcrDesc
```

sampleDesc.tex This is similar to the previous example, except that it defines the acronyms using `\newglossaryentry` instead of `\newacronym`. As with the previous example, the glossary is added to the table of contents, so an extra run through L^AT_EX is required:

```
latex sampleDesc
makeglossaries sampleDesc
latex sampleDesc
latex sampleDesc
```

sampleCustomAcr.tex This document has some sample acronyms with a custom acronym style. It also adds the glossary to the table of contents, so an extra run through L^AT_EX is required:

```
latex sampleCustomAcr
makeglossaries sampleCustomAcr
```

1 Introduction

```
latex sampleCustomAcr
latex sampleCustomAcr
```

sampleFnAcrDesc.tex This is similar to `sampleAcrDesc.tex`, except that it uses the footnote-sc-desc style. As with the previous example, the glossary is added to the table of contents, so an extra run through L^AT_EX is required:

```
latex sampleFnAcrDesc
makeglossaries sampleFnAcrDesc
latex sampleFnAcrDesc
latex sampleFnAcrDesc
```

sample-FnDesc.tex This example defines a custom display format that puts the description in a footnote on first use.

```
latex sample-FnDesc
makeglossaries sample-FnDesc
latex sample-FnDesc
```

sample-custom-acronym.tex This document illustrates how to define your own acronym style if the predefined styles don't suit your requirements.

```
latex sample-custom-acronym
makeglossaries sample-custom-acronym
latex sample-custom-acronym
```

sample-crossref.tex This document illustrates how to cross-reference entries in the glossary.

```
latex sample-crossref
makeglossaries sample-crossref
latex sample-crossref
```

1 Introduction

sampleDB.tex This document illustrates how to load external files containing the glossary definitions. It also illustrates how to define a new glossary type. This document has the **number list** suppressed and uses `\glsaddall` to add all the entries to the glossaries without referencing each one explicitly. To create the document do:

```
latex sampleDB
makeglossaries sampleDB
latex sampleDB
```

The glossary definitions are stored in the accompanying files `database1.tex` and `database2.tex`. Note that if you don't have Perl installed, you will need to use **makeindex** twice instead of a single call to **makeglossaries**:

1. Create the main glossary (all on one line):

```
makeindex -s sampleDB.ist -t sampleDB.glg -o
sampleDB.gls sampleDB.glo
```

2. Create the secondary glossary (all on one line):

```
makeindex -s sampleDB.ist -t sampleDB.nlg -o
sampleDB.not sampleDB.ntn
```

sampleEq.tex This document illustrates how to change the location to something other than the page number. In this case, the `equation` counter is used since all glossary entries appear inside an `equation` environment. To create the document do:

```
latex sampleEq
makeglossaries sampleEq
latex sampleEq
```

sampleEqPg.tex This is similar to the previous example, but the **number lists** are a mixture of page numbers and equation numbers. This example adds the glossary to the table of contents, so an extra \LaTeX run is required:

1 Introduction

```
latex sampleEqPg
makeglossaries sampleEqPg
latex sampleEqPg
latex sampleEqPg
```

sampleSec.tex This document also illustrates how to change the location to something other than the page number. In this case, the `section` counter is used. This example adds the glossary to the table of contents, so an extra \LaTeX run is required:

```
latex sampleSec
makeglossaries sampleSec
latex sampleSec
latex sampleSec
```

sampleNtn.tex This document illustrates how to create an additional glossary type. This example adds the glossary to the table of contents, so an extra \LaTeX run is required:

```
latex sampleNtn
makeglossaries sampleNtn
latex sampleNtn
latex sampleNtn
```

Note that if you don't have Perl installed, you will need to use `makeindex` twice instead of a single call to `makeglossaries`:

1. Create the main glossary (all on one line):

```
makeindex -s sampleNtn.ist -t sampleNtn.glg
-o sampleNtn.gls sampleNtn.glo
```

2. Create the secondary glossary (all on one line):

```
makeindex -s sampleNtn.ist -t sampleNtn.nlg
-o sampleNtn.not sampleNtn.ntn
```

1 Introduction

sample.tex This document illustrates some of the basics, including how to create child entries that use the same name as the parent entry. This example adds the glossary to the table of contents and it also uses `\glsrefentry`, so an extra \LaTeX run is required:

```
latex sample
makeglossaries sample
latex sample
latex sample
```

You can see the difference between word and letter ordering if you substitute `order=word` with `order=letter`. (Note that this will only have an effect if you use `makeglossaries`. If you use `makeindex` explicitly, you will need to use the `-l` switch to indicate letter ordering.)

sample-inline.tex This document is like `sample.tex`, above, but uses the inline glossary style to put the glossary in a footnote.

sampletree.tex This document illustrates a hierarchical glossary structure where child entries have different names to their corresponding parent entry. To create the document do:

```
latex sampletree
makeglossaries sampletree
latex sampletree
```

sample-dual.tex This document illustrates how to define an entry that both appears in the list of acronyms and in the main glossary. To create the document do:

```
latex sample-dual
makeglossaries sample-dual
latex sample-dual
```

sample-langdict.tex This document illustrates how to use the glossaries package to create English to French and French to English dictionaries. To create the document do:

1 Introduction

```
latex sample-langdict
makeglossaries sample-langdict
latex sample-langdict
```

samplexdy.tex This document illustrates how to use the glossaries package with `xindy` instead of `makeindex`. The document uses UTF8 encoding (with the `inputenc` package). The encoding is picked up by `makeglossaries`. By default, this document will create a `xindy` style file called `samplexdy.xdy`, but if you uncomment the lines

```
\setStyleFile{samplexdy-mc}
\noist
\GlsSetXdyLanguage{}
```

it will set the style file to `samplexdy-mc.xdy` instead. This provides an additional letter group for entries starting with “Mc” or “Mac”. If you use `makeglossaries`, you don’t need to supply any additional information. If you don’t use `makeglossaries`, you will need to specify the required information. Note that if you set the style file to `samplexdy-mc.xdy` you must also specify `\noist`, otherwise the glossaries package will overwrite `samplexdy-mc.xdy` and you will lose the “Mc” letter group.

To create the document do:

```
latex samplexdy
makeglossaries samplexdy
latex samplexdy
```

If you don’t have Perl installed, you will have to call `xindy` explicitly instead of using `makeglossaries`. If you are using the default style file `samplexdy.xdy`, then do (no line breaks):

```
xindy -L english -C utf8 -I xindy -M samplexdy -t
samplexdy.glg -o samplexdy.gls samplexdy.glo
```

otherwise, if you are using `samplexdy-mc.xdy`, then do (no line breaks):

1 Introduction

```
xindy -I xindy -M samplexdy-mc -t samplexdy.glg  
-o samplexdy.gls samplexdy.glo
```

samplexdy2.tex This document illustrates how to use the glossaries package where the location numbers don't follow a standard format. This example will only work with **xindy**. To create the document do:

```
pdflatex samplexdy2  
makeglossaries samplexdy2  
pdflatex samplexdy2
```

If you can't use **makeglossaries** then you need to do (all on one line):

```
xindy -L english -C utf8 -I xindy -M samplexdy2  
-t samplexdy2.glg -o samplexdy2.gls samplexdy2.glo
```

See Section 11.2 for further details.

sampleutf8.tex This is another example that uses **xindy**. Unlike **makeindex**, **xindy** can cope with **non-Latin characters**. This document uses UTF8 encoding. To create the document do:

```
latex sampleutf8  
makeglossaries sampleutf8  
latex sampleutf8
```

If you don't have Perl installed, you will have to call **xindy** explicitly instead of using **makeglossaries** (no line breaks):

```
xindy -L english -C utf8 -I xindy -M sampleutf8  
-t sampleutf8.glg -o sampleutf8.gls sampleutf8.glo
```

If you remove the xindy option from **sampleutf8.tex** and do:

```
latex sampleutf8
```

1 Introduction

```
makeglossaries sampleutf8
latex sampleutf8
```

you will see that the entries that start with a **non-Latin character** now appear in the symbols group, and the word “manœuvre” is now after “manor” instead of before it. If you are unable to use **makeglossaries**, the call to **makeindex** is as follows (no line breaks):

```
makeindex -s sampleutf8.ist -t sampleutf8.glg -o
sampleutf8.gls sampleutf8.glo
```

sample-index.tex This document uses the glossaries package to create both a glossary and an index. This requires two **makeglossaries** calls to ensure the document is up to date:

```
latex sample-index
makeglossaries sample-index
latex sample-index
makeglossaries sample-index
latex sample-index
```

sample-newkeys.tex This document illustrates how add custom keys.

sample-numberlist.tex This document illustrates how to reference the **number list** in the document text. This requires an additional **L^AT_EX** run:

```
latex sample-numberlist
makeglossaries sample-numberlist
latex sample-numberlist
latex sample-numberlist
```

samplePeople.tex This document illustrates how you can hook into the standard sort mechanism to adjust the way the sort key

1 Introduction

is set. This requires an additional run to ensure the table of contents is up-to-date:

```
latex samplePeople
makeglossaries samplePeople
latex samplePeople
latex samplePeople
```

sampleSort.tex This is another document that illustrates how to hook into the standard sort mechanism. An additional run is required to ensure the table of contents is up-to-date:

```
latex sampleSort
makeglossaries sampleSort
latex sampleSort
latex sampleSort
```

sample-nomathhyper.tex This document illustrates how to selective enable and disable entry hyperlinks in `\glsentryfmt`.

sample-entryfmt.tex This document illustrates how to change the way an entry is displayed in the text.

sample-prefix.tex This document illustrates the use of the glossaries-prefix package. An additional run is required to ensure the table of contents is up-to-date:

```
latex sample-prefix
makeglossaries sample-prefix
latex sample-prefix
latex sample-prefix
```

sampleaccsupp.tex This document uses the experimental glossaries-accsupp package. The symbol is set to the replacement text. Note that some PDF viewers don't use the accessibility support. Information about the glossaries-accsupp package can be found in Section 18.

1.2 Multi-Lingual Support

As from version 1.17, the glossaries package can now be used with `xindy` as well as `makeindex`. If you are writing in a language that uses an **extended Latin alphabet** or **non-Latin alphabet** it is recommended that you use `xindy` as `makeindex` is hard-coded for the non-extended **Latin alphabet**. This means that you are not restricted to the A, ..., Z letter groups. If you want to use `xindy`, remember to use the `xindy` package option. For example:

```
\documentclass[frenchb]{article}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage{babel}
\usepackage[xindy]{glossaries}
```

Note that although a **non-Latin character**, such as `é`, looks like a plain character in your tex file, it's actually a macro and can therefore cause expansion problems. You may need to switch off the field expansions with `\glsnoexpandfields`.

If you use a **non-Latin character** (or other expandable) character at the start of an entry name, you must place it in a group, or it will cause a problem for commands that convert the first letter to upper case (e.g. `\Gls`) due to expansion issues. For example:

```
\newglossaryentry{elite}{name={{é}lite},
description={select group or class}}
```

If you use the `inputenc` package, `makeglossaries` will pick up the encoding from the auxiliary file. If you use `xindy` explicitly instead of via `makeglossaries`, you may need to specify the encoding using the `-C` option. Read the `xindy` manual for further details.

1.2.1 Changing the Fixed Names

As from version 1.08, the glossaries package now has limited multi-lingual support, thanks to all the people who have sent me the relevant translations either via email or via `comp.text.tex`. However you must load `babel` or `polyglossia` *before* `glossaries` to enable this. Note that if `babel` is loaded and the translator package is detected on \TeX 's path, then the translator package will be loaded automatically, unless you use the `translate=false` or `translate=babel` package options. However, it may not pick up on the required languages so, if the prede-

1 Introduction

defined text is not translated, you may need to explicitly load the translator package with the required languages. For example:

```
\usepackage[spanish]{babel}  
\usepackage[spanish]{translator}  
\usepackage{glossaries}
```

Alternatively, specify the language as a class option rather than a package option. For example:

```
\documentclass[spanish]{report}  
  
\usepackage{babel}  
\usepackage{glossaries}
```

If you want to use `ngerman` or `german` instead of `babel`, you will need to include the `translator` package to provide the translations. For example:

```
\documentclass[ngerman]{article}  
\usepackage{ngerman}  
\usepackage{translator}  
\usepackage{glossaries}
```

The languages are currently supported by the `glossaries` package are listed in [table 1.2](#). Please note that (apart from spelling mistakes) I don't intend to change the default translations as it will cause compatibility problems.

If you want to add a language not currently supported, you can post the contents of your `.dict` file on my feature request form at <http://www.dickimaw-books.com/feature-request.html>. Please use \LaTeX commands for **non-Latin characters** as the file must be independent of the input encoding otherwise it won't be of any use to people who use a different encoding to yourself.

The language dependent commands and translator keys used by the `glossaries` package are listed in [table 1.3](#).

Due to the varied nature of glossaries, it's likely that the predefined translations may not be appropriate. If you are using the `babel` package and the `glossaries` package option `translate=babel`, you need to be familiar with the advice given in <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=latexwords>. If you are using the `translator` package, then you can provide your own dictionary with the necessary modifications (using `\deftranslation`) and load it using `\usedictionary`.

1 Introduction

Table 1.2: Supported Languages

Language	As from version
Brazilian Portuguese	1.17
Danish	1.08
Dutch	1.08
English	1.08
French	1.08
German	1.08
Irish	1.08
Italian	1.08
Hungarian	1.08
Polish	1.13
Serbian	2.06
Spanish	1.08

Note that the dictionaries are loaded at the beginning of the document, so it won't have any effect if you put `\deftranslation` in the preamble. It should be put in your personal dictionary instead (as in the example below). See the translator documentation for further details. (Now with beamer documentation.)

Your custom dictionary doesn't have to be just a translation from English to another language. You may prefer to have a dictionary for a particular type of document. For example, suppose your institution's in-house reports have to have the glossary labelled as "Nomenclature" and the page list should be labelled "Location", then you can create a file called, say,

`myinstitute-glossaries-dictionary-English.dict`

that contains the following:

```
\ProvidesDictionary{myinstitute-glossaries-dictionary}{English}
\deftranslation{Glossary}{Nomenclature}
\deftranslation{Page List (glossaries)}{Location}
```

You can now load it using:

```
\usedictionary{myinstitute-glossaries-dictionary}
```

(Make sure that `myinstitute-glossaries-dictionary-English.dict` can be found by TeX.) If you want to share your custom dictionary, you can upload it to [CTAN](#).

Table 1.3: Customised Text

Command Name	Translator Key Word	Purpose
<code>\glossaryname</code>	Glossary	Title of the main glossary.
<code>\acronymname</code>	Acronyms	Title of the list of acronyms (when used with package option <code>acronym</code>).
<code>\entryname</code>	Notation (glossaries)	Header for first column in the glossary (for 2, 3 or 4 column glossaries that support headers).
<code>\descriptionname</code>	Description (glossaries)	Header for second column in the glossary (for 2, 3 or 4 column glossaries that support headers).
<code>\symbolname</code>	Symbol (glossaries)	Header for symbol column in the glossary for glossary styles that support this option.
<code>\pagelistname</code>	Page List (glossaries)	Header for page list column in the glossary for glossaries that support this option.
<code>\glssymbolsgroupname</code>	Symbols (glossaries)	Header for symbols section of the glossary for glossary styles that support this option.
<code>\glsnumbersgroupname</code>	Numbers (glossaries)	Header for numbers section of the glossary for glossary styles that support this option.

1 Introduction

If you are using `babel` and don't want to use the translator interface, you can use the package option `translate=babel`. For example:

```
\documentclass[british]{article}

\usepackage{babel}
\usepackage[translate=babel]{glossaries}

\addto\captionsbritish{%
  \renewcommand*{\glossaryname}{List of Terms}%
  \renewcommand*{\acronymname}{List of Acronyms}%
}
```

If you are using `polyglossia` instead of `babel`, `glossaries-polyglossia` will automatically be loaded unless you specify the package option `translate=false`.

Note that `xindy` provides much better multi-lingual support than `makeindex`, so it's recommended that you use `xindy` if you have glossary entries that contain **non-Latin characters**. See Section 11 for further details.

1.3 Generating the Associated Glossary Files

This section is only applicable if you have chosen Options 2 or 3. You can ignore this section if you have chosen Option 1.

In order to generate a sorted glossary with compact **number lists**, it is necessary to use an external **indexing application** as an intermediate step (unless you have chosen Option 1). It is this application that creates the file containing the code that typesets the glossary. If this step is omitted, the glossaries will not appear in your document. The two indexing applications that are most commonly used with \LaTeX are `makeindex` and `xindy`. As from version 1.17, the `glossaries` package can be used with either of these applications. Previous versions were designed to be used with `makeindex` only. Note that `xindy` has much better multi-lingual support than `makeindex`, so `xindy` is recommended if you're not writing in English. Commands that only have an effect when `xindy` is used are described in Section 11.

This is a multi-stage process, but there are methods of automating document compilation using applications such as `latexmk` and `arara`. See <http://www.dickimaw-books.com/latex/thesis/html/build.html> for more information.

1 Introduction

The glossaries package comes with the Perl script `makeglossaries` which will run `makeindex` or `xindy` on all the glossary files using a customized style file (which is created by `\makeglossaries`). See Section 1.3.1 for further details. Perl is stable, cross-platform, open source software that is used by a number of T_EX-related applications. Most Unix-like operating systems come with a Perl interpreter. T_EX Live also comes with a Perl interpreter. MiK_TE_X doesn't come with a Perl interpreter so if you are a Windows MiK_TE_X user you will need to install Perl if you want to use `makeglossaries`. Further information is available at <http://www.perl.org/about.html> and [MiK_TE_X and Perl scripts \(and one Python script\)](#).

The advantages of using `makeglossaries`:

- It automatically detects whether to use `makeindex` or `xindy` and sets the relevant application switches.
- One call of `makeglossaries` will run `makeindex`/`xindy` for each glossary type.
- If things go wrong, `makeglossaries` will scan the messages from `makeindex` or `xindy` and attempt to diagnose the problem in relation to the glossaries package. This will hopefully provide more helpful messages in some cases. If it can't diagnose the problem, you will have to read the relevant transcript file and see if you can work it out from the `makeindex` or `xindy` messages.

There is also a Java GUI alternative called `makeglossariesgui`, distributed separately, that has diagnostic tools.

Whilst it is strongly recommended that you use the `makeglossaries` script or `makeglossariesgui`, it is possible to use the glossaries package without using either application. However, note that some commands and package options have no effect if you don't use `makeglossaries` or `makeglossariesgui`. These are listed in [table 1.4](#).

If you are choosing not to use `makeglossaries` because you don't want to install Perl, you will only be able to use `makeindex` as `xindy` also requires Perl.

Note that if any of your entries use an entry that is not referenced outside the glossary, you will need to do an additional `makeglossaries`, `makeindex` or `xindy` run, as appropriate. For example, suppose you have defined the following entries:³

³As from v3.01 `\gls` is no longer fragile and doesn't need protecting.

1 Introduction

```
\newglossaryentry{citrusfruit}{name={citrus fruit},  
description={fruit of any citrus tree. (See also  
\gls{orange})}}
```

```
\newglossaryentry{orange}{name={orange},  
description={an orange coloured fruit.}}
```

and suppose you have `\gls{citrusfruit}` in your document but don't reference the `orange` entry, then the `orange` entry won't appear in your glossary until you first create the glossary and then do another run of `makeglossaries`, `makeindex` or `xindy`. For example, if the document is called `myDoc.tex`, then you must do:

```
latex myDoc  
makeglossaries myDoc  
latex myDoc  
makeglossaries myDoc  
latex myDoc
```

Likewise, an additional `makeglossaries` and \LaTeX run may be required if the document pages shift with re-runs. For example, if the page numbering is not reset after the table of contents, the insertion of the table of contents on the second \LaTeX run may push glossary entries across page boundaries, which means that the `number lists` in the glossary may need updating.

The examples in this document assume that you are accessing `makeglossaries`, `xindy` or `makeindex` via a terminal. Windows users can use the MSDOS Prompt which is usually accessed via the Start → All Programs menu or Start → All Programs → Accessories menu.

Alternatively, your text editor may have the facility to create a function that will call the required application. The article “[Glossaries, Nomenclature, List of Symbols and Acronyms](#)” in the \LaTeX Community's⁴ Know How section describes how to do this for TeXnicCenter, and the thread “[Executing Glossaries' makeindex from a WinEdt macro](#)” on the `comp.text.tex` newsgroup describes how to do it for WinEdt. [Section 1.1 \(Building Your Document\)](#) of “[Using \$\text{\LaTeX}\$ to Write a PhD Thesis](#)”⁵ describes how to do it for TeXWorks. For other editors see the editor's user manual for further details.

If any problems occur, remember to check the transcript files (e.g. `.glg` or `.alg`) for messages.

⁴<http://www.latex-community.org/>

⁵<http://www.dickimaw-books.com/latex/thesis/>

Table 1.4: Commands and package options that have no effect when using `xindy` or `makeindex` explicitly

Command or Package Option	<code>makeindex</code>	<code>xindy</code>
<code>order=letter</code>	use <code>-l</code>	use <code>-M ord/letorder</code>
<code>order=word</code>	default	default
<code>xindy={language=<lang>,codename=<code>}</code>	N/A	use <code>-L <lang> -C <code></code>
<code>\GlsSetXdyLanguage{<lang>}</code>	N/A	use <code>-L <lang></code>
<code>\GlsSetXdyCodePage{<code>}</code>	N/A	use <code>-C <code></code>

1.3.1 Using the makeglossaries Perl Script

The `makeglossaries` script picks up the relevant information from the auxiliary (`.aux`) file and will either call `xindy` or `makeindex`, depending on the supplied information. Therefore, you only need to pass the document's name without the extension to `makeglossaries`. For example, if your document is called `myDoc.tex`, type the following in your terminal:

```
latex myDoc
makeglossaries myDoc
latex myDoc
```

You may need to explicitly load `makeglossaries` into Perl:

```
perl makeglossaries myDoc
```

Windows users: TeX Live on Windows has its own internal Perl interpreter and provides `makeglossaries.exe` as a convenient wrapper for the `makeglossaries` Perl script. MiKTeX also provides a wrapper `makeglossaries.exe` but doesn't provide a Perl interpreter, which is still required even if you run MiKTeX's `makeglossaries.exe`, so with MiKTeX you'll need to install Perl. There's more information about this at <http://tex.stackexchange.com/q/158796/19862> on the TeX.SX site. Alternatively, there is a batch file called `makeglossaries.bat` that should be located in the same folder as the `makeglossaries` Perl script. This just explicitly loads the script into Perl. If you've installed Perl but for some reason your operating system can't find `perl.exe`, you can edit the `makeglossaries.bat` file to include the full path to `perl.exe` (but take care as this file will be overwritten next time you update the glossaries package). If you move the `.bat` file to a new location,

1 Introduction

you will also need to supply the full path to the `makeglossaries` Perl script. (Don't also move the Perl script as well or you may miss out on updates to `makeglossaries`.)

The `makeglossaries` script attempts to fork the `makeindex/xindy` process using `open()` on the piped redirection `2>&1 |` and parses the processor output to help diagnose problems. If this method fails `makeglossaries` will print an "Unable to fork" warning and will retry without redirection. If you run `makeglossaries` on an operating system that doesn't support this form of redirection, then you can use the `-Q` switch to suppress this warning or you can use the `-k` switch to make `makeglossaries` automatically use the fallback method without attempting the redirection. Without this redirection, the `-q` (quiet) switch doesn't work as well.

You can specify in which directory the `.aux`, `.glo` etc files are located using the `-d` switch. For example:

```
pdflatex -output-directory myTmpDir myDoc
makeglossaries -d myTmpDir myDoc
```

Note that `makeglossaries` assumes by default that `makeindex/xindy` is on your operating system's path. If this isn't the case, you can specify the full pathname using `-m <path/to/makeindex>` for `makeindex` or `-x <path/to/xindy>` for `xindy`.

The `makeglossaries` script contains POD (Plain Old Documentation). If you want, you can create a man page for `makeglossaries` using `pod2man` and move the resulting file onto the man path. Alternatively do `makeglossaries --help` for a list of all options or `makeglossaries --version` for the version number.

When upgrading the glossaries package, make sure you also upgrade your version of `makeglossaries`. The current version is 2.14.

1.3.2 Using `xindy` explicitly (Option 3)

`Xindy` comes with \TeX Live, but not with $\text{MiK}\text{\TeX}$. However $\text{MiK}\text{\TeX}$ users can install it. See [How to use Xindy with MikTeX on \TeX on StackExchange](#)⁶.

If you want to use `xindy` to process the glossary files, you must make sure you have used the `xindy` package option:

```
\usepackage[xindy]{glossaries}
```

⁶<http://www.stackexchange.com/>

1 Introduction

This is required regardless of whether you use `xindy` explicitly or whether it's called implicitly via applications such as `makeglossaries` or `makeglossariesgui`. This causes the glossary entries to be written in raw `xindy` format, so you need to use `-I xindy not -I tex`.

To run `xindy` type the following in your terminal (all on one line):

```
xindy -L  $\langle language \rangle$  -C  $\langle encoding \rangle$  -I xindy -M  $\langle style \rangle$  -t  $\langle base \rangle$ .glg  
-o  $\langle base \rangle$ .gls  $\langle base \rangle$ .glo
```

where $\langle language \rangle$ is the required language name, $\langle encoding \rangle$ is the encoding, $\langle base \rangle$ is the name of the document without the `.tex` extension and $\langle style \rangle$ is the name of the `xindy` style file without the `.xdy` extension. The default name for this style file is $\langle base \rangle$.xdy but can be changed via `\setStyleFile{ $\langle style \rangle$ }`. You may need to specify the full path name depending on the current working directory. If any of the file names contain spaces, you must delimit them using double-quotes.

For example, if your document is called `myDoc.tex` and you are using UTF8 encoding in English, then type the following in your terminal:

```
xindy -L english -C utf8 -I xindy -M myDoc -t myDoc.glg  
-o myDoc.gls myDoc.glo
```

Note that this just creates the main glossary. You need to do the same for each of the other glossaries (including the list of acronyms if you have used the acronym package option), substituting `.glg`, `.gls` and `.glo` with the relevant extensions. For example, if you have used the acronym package option, then you would need to do:

```
xindy -L english -C utf8 -I xindy -M myDoc -t myDoc.alg  
-o myDoc.acr myDoc.acn
```

For additional glossaries, the extensions are those supplied when you created the glossary with `\newglossary`.

Note that if you use `makeglossaries` instead, you can replace all those calls to `xindy` with just one call to `makeglossaries`:

```
makeglossaries myDoc
```

Note also that some commands and package options have no effect if you use `xindy` explicitly instead of using `makeglossaries`. These are listed in [table 1.4](#).

1.3.3 Using `makeindex` explicitly (Option 2)

If you want to use `makeindex` explicitly, you must make sure that you haven't used the `xindy` package option or the glossary entries will be written in the wrong format. To run `makeindex`, type the following in your terminal:

```
makeindex -s <style>.ist -t <base>.glg -o <base>.gls <base>.glo
```

where `<base>` is the name of your document without the `.tex` extension and `<style>.ist` is the name of the `makeindex` style file. By default, this is `<base>.ist`, but may be changed via `\setStyleFile{<style>}`. Note that there are other options, such as `-l` (letter ordering). See the `makeindex` manual for further details.

For example, if your document is called `myDoc.tex`, then type the following at the terminal:

```
makeindex -s myDoc.ist -t myDoc.glg -o myDoc.gls myDoc.glo
```

Note that this only creates the main glossary. If you have additional glossaries (for example, if you have used the `acronym` package option) then you must call `makeindex` for each glossary, substituting `.glg`, `.gls` and `.glo` with the relevant extensions. For example, if you have used the `acronym` package option, then you need to type the following in your terminal:

```
makeindex -s myDoc.ist -t myDoc.alg -o myDoc.acr myDoc.acn
```

For additional glossaries, the extensions are those supplied when you created the glossary with `\newglossary`.

Note that if you use `makeglossaries` instead, you can replace all those calls to `makeindex` with just one call to `makeglossaries`:

```
makeglossaries myDoc
```

Note also that some commands and package options have no effect if you use `makeindex` explicitly instead of using `makeglossaries`. These are listed in [table 1.4](#).

1.3.4 Note to Front-End and Script Developers

The information needed to determine whether to use `xindy` or `makeindex` and the information needed to call those applications is stored in the auxiliary file. This information can be gathered by a

1 Introduction

front-end, editor or script to make the glossaries where appropriate. This section describes how the information is stored in the auxiliary file.

The file extensions used by each defined glossary are given by

`\@newglossary`

```
\@newglossary{<label>}{<log>}{<out-ext>}{<in-ext>}
```

where `<in-ext>` is the extension of the *indexing application's* input file (the output file from the glossaries package's point of view), `<out-ext>` is the extension of the *indexing application's* output file (the input file from the glossaries package's point of view) and `<log>` is the extension of the indexing application's transcript file. The label for the glossary is also given for information purposes only, but is not required by the indexing applications. For example, the information for the default main glossary is written as:

```
\@newglossary{main}{glg}{gls}{glo}
```

The *indexing application's* style file is specified by

`\@istfilename`

```
\@istfilename{<filename>}
```

The file extension indicates whether to use *makeindex* (`.ist`) or *xindy* (`.xdy`). Note that the glossary information is formatted differently depending on which indexing application is supposed to be used, so it's important to call the correct one.

Word or letter ordering is specified by:

`\@glsorder`

```
\@glsorder{<order>}
```

where `<order>` can be either `word` or `letter`.

If *xindy* should be used, the language and code page for each glossary is specified by

`\@xdylanguage`
`\@gls@codepage`

```
\@xdylanguage{<label>}{<language>}  
\@gls@codepage{<label>}{<code>}
```

where `<label>` identifies the glossary, `<language>` is the root language (e.g. `english`) and `<code>` is the encoding (e.g. `utf8`). These commands are omitted if *makeindex* should be used.

If **Option 1** has been used, the `.aux` file will contain

```
\@gls@reference{<type>}{<label>}{<location>}
```

1 Introduction

for every time an entry has been referenced.

2 Package Options

This section describes the available glossaries package options. You may omit the `=true` for boolean options. (For example, `acronym` is equivalent to `acronym=true`).

Note that $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ package options can't be passed via the document class options. (This includes options where the $\langle value \rangle$ part may be omitted, such as `acronym`.) This is a general limitation not restricted to the glossaries package. Options that aren't $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ (such as `makeindex`) may be passed via the document class options.

2.1 General Options

nowarn This suppresses all warnings generated by the glossaries package. Don't use this option if you're new to using glossaries as the warnings are designed to help detect common mistakes (such as forgetting to use `\makeglossaries`).

noredefwarn If you load glossaries with a class or another package that already defines glossary related commands, by default glossaries will warn you that it's redefining those commands. If you are aware of the consequences of using glossaries with that class or package and you don't want to be warned about it, use this option to suppress those warnings. Other warnings will still be issued unless you use the `nowarn` option described above.

nomain This suppresses the creation of the main glossary and associated `.glo` file, if unrequired. Note that if you use this option, you must create another glossary in which to put all your entries (either via the `acronym` (or `acronyms`) package option described in Section 2.5 or via the `symbols`, `numbers` or `index` options described in Section 2.6 or via `\newglossary` described in Section 12).

2 Package Options

If you don't use the main glossary and you don't use this option, `makeglossaries` will produce the following warning:

```
Warning: File 'filename.glo' is empty.  
Have you used any entries defined in glossary  
'main'?  
Remember to use package option 'nomain' if  
you don't want to use the main glossary.
```

If you did actually want to use the main glossary and you see this warning, check that you have referenced the entries in that glossary via commands such as `\gls`.

sanitizesort This is a boolean option that determines whether or not to `sanitize` the sort value when writing to the external glossary file. For example, suppose you define an entry as follows:

```
\newglossaryentry{hash}{name={\#}, sort={\#},  
description={hash symbol}}
```

The sort value (`#`) must be sanitized before writing it to the glossary file, otherwise \LaTeX will try to interpret it as a parameter reference. If, on the other hand, you want the sort value expanded, you need to switch off the sanitization. For example, suppose you do:

```
\newcommand{\mysortvalue}{AAA}  
\newglossaryentry{sample}{%  
name={sample},  
sort={\mysortvalue},  
description={an example}}
```

and you actually want `\mysortvalue` expanded, so that the entry is sorted according to `AAA`, then use the package option `sanitizesort=false`.

The default for Options 2 and 3 is `sanitizesort=true`, and the default for Option 1 is `sanitizesort=false`.

savewrites This is a boolean option to minimise the number of write registers used by the glossaries package. (Default is `savewrites=false`.) There are only a limited number of write registers, and if you have a large number of glossaries or if you are using a class or other packages that create a lot of external files,

2 Package Options

you may exceed the maximum number of available registers. If `savewrites` is set, the glossary information will be stored in token registers until the end of the document when they will be written to the external files. If you run out of token registers, you can use `etex`.

This option can significantly slow document compilation. As an alternative, you can use the `scrfile` package (part of the KOMA-Script bundle) and not use this option.

You can also reduce the number of write registers by using **Option 1** or by ensuring you define all your glossary entries in the preamble.

If you want to use T_EX's `\write18` mechanism to call `makeindex` or `xindy` from your document and use `savewrites`, you must create the external files with `\glswritefiles` before you call `makeindex/xindy`. Also set `\glswritefiles` to `nothing` or `\relax` before the end of the document to avoid rewriting the files. For example:

```
\glswritefiles
\write18{makeindex -s \listfilename\space
-t \jobname.glg -o \jobname.gls \jobname}
\let\glswritefiles\relax
```

translate This can take the following values:

translate=true If `babel` has been loaded and the translator package is installed, translator will be loaded and the translations will be provided by the translator package interface. You can modify the translations by providing your own dictionary. If the translator package isn't installed and `babel` is loaded, the `glossaries-babel` package will be loaded and the translations will be provided using `babel`'s `\addto\caption{language}` mechanism. If `polyglossia` has been loaded, `glossaries-polyglossia` will be loaded.

translate=false Don't provide translations, even if `babel` or `polyglossia` has been loaded. (Note that `babel` provides the command `\glossaryname` so that will still be translated if you have loaded `babel`.)

2 Package Options

translate=babel Don't load the translator package. Instead load glossaries-babel.

I recommend you use `translate=babel` if you have any problems with the translations or with PDF bookmarks, but to maintain backward compatibility, if `babel` has been loaded the default is `translate=true`.

If `translate` is specified without a value, `translate=true` is assumed. If `translate` isn't specified, `translate=true` is assumed if `babel`, `polyglossia` or `translator` have been loaded. Otherwise `translate=false` is assumed.

See Section 1.2.1 for further details.

notranslate This is equivalent to `translate=false` and may be passed via the document class options.

hyperfirst This is a boolean option that specifies whether each term has a hyperlink on **first use**. The default is `hyperfirst=true` (terms on **first use** have a hyperlink, unless explicitly suppressed using starred versions of commands such as `\gls*`). Note that this applies to all glossary types. It may be that you only want to apply this to just the acronyms (where the first use explains the meaning of the acronym) but not for ordinary glossary entries (where the first use is identical to subsequent uses). In this case, you can use `hyperfirst=false` and apply `\glsunsetall` to all the regular (non-acronym) glossaries. For example:

```
\usepackage[acronym,hyperfirst=false]{glossaries}
% acronym and glossary entry definitions

% at the end of the preamble
\glsunsetall[main]
```

nohypertypes Use this option if you have multiple glossaries and you want to suppress the entry hyperlinks for a particular glossary or glossaries. The value of this option should be a comma-separated list of glossary types where `\gls` etc shouldn't have hyperlinks by default. Make sure you enclose the value in braces if it contains any commas. Example:

```
\usepackage[acronym,nohypertypes={acronym,notation}]
{glossaries}
\newglossary[nlg]{notation}{not}{ntn}{Notation}
```

2 Package Options

The values must be fully expanded, so **don't** try `nohypertypes=\acronymtype`. You may also use

```
\GlsDeclareNoHyperList{<list>}
```

instead or additionally. See Section 6 for further details.

savenumberlist This is a boolean option that specifies whether or not to gather and store the **number list** for each entry. The default is `savenumberlist=false`. (See `\glstentrynumberlist` and `\glstdisplaynumberlist` in Section 9.) This is always true if you use **Option 1**.

2.2 Sectioning, Headings and TOC Options

toc Add the glossaries to the table of contents. Note that an extra \LaTeX run is required with this option. Alternatively, you can switch this function on and off using

`\glstoctrue`

```
\glstoctrue
```

and

`\glstocfalse`

```
\glstocfalse
```

numberline When used with `toc`, this will add `\numberline{}` in the final argument of `\addcontentsline`. This will align the table of contents entry with the numbered section titles. Note that this option has no effect if the `toc` option is omitted. If `toc` is used without `numberline`, the title will be aligned with the section numbers rather than the section titles.

section This is a `<key>=<value>` option. Its value should be the name of a sectional unit (e.g. chapter). This will make the glossaries appear in the named sectional unit, otherwise each glossary will appear in a chapter, if chapters exist, otherwise in a section. Un-numbered sectional units will be used by default. Example:

```
\usepackage[section=subsection]{glossaries}
```

You can omit the value if you want to use sections, i.e.

```
\usepackage[section]{glossaries}
```

2 Package Options

is equivalent to

```
\usepackage[section=section]{glossaries}
```

You can change this value later in the document using

```
\setglossarysection
```

```
\setglossarysection{<name>}
```

where *<name>* is the sectional unit.

The start of each glossary adds information to the page header via

```
\glsglossarymark
```

```
\glsglossarymark{<glossary title>}
```

By default this uses `\@mkboth`¹ but you may need to redefine it. For example, to only change the right header:

```
\renewcommand{\glsglossarymark}[1]{\markright{#1}}
```

or to prevent it from changing the headers:

```
\renewcommand{\glsglossarymark}[1]{}%
```

If you want `\glsglossarymark` to use `\MakeUppercase` in the header, use the `ucmark` option described below.

Occasionally you may find that another package defines `\cleardoublepage` when it is not required. This may cause an unwanted blank page to appear before each glossary. This can be fixed by redefining `\glsclearpage`:

```
\glsclearpage
```

```
\renewcommand*{\glsclearpage}{\clearpage}
```

ucmark This is a boolean option (default: `ucmark=false`, unless `memoir` has been loaded, in which case it defaults to `ucmark=true`). If set, `\glsglossarymark` uses `\MakeTextUppercase`². You can test whether this option has been set or not using

```
\ifglsucmark
```

```
\ifglsucmark <true part>\else <false part>\fi
```

¹unless `memoir` is loaded, which case it uses `\markboth`

²Actually it uses `\mfirstucMakeUppercase` which is set to `textcase's` `\MakeTextUppercase` by the `glossaries` package. This makes it consistent with `\makefirstuc`. (The `textcase` package is automatically loaded by `glossaries`.)

2 Package Options

For example:

```
\renewcommand{\glsglossarymark}[1]{%
  \ifglsucmark
    \markright{\MakeTextUppercase{#1}}%
  \else
    \markright{#1}%
  \fi}
```

If memoir has been loaded and ucfirst is set, then memoir's `\memUHead` is used.

numberedsection The glossaries are placed in unnumbered sectional units by default, but this can be changed using `numberedsection`. This option can take one of the following values:

- `false`: no number, i.e. use starred form of sectioning command (e.g. `\chapter*` or `\section*`);
- `nolabel`: use a numbered section, i.e. the unstarred form of sectioning command (e.g. `\chapter` or `\section`), but the section not labelled;
- `autolabel`: numbered with automatic labelling. Each glossary uses the unstarred form of a sectioning command (e.g. `\chapter` or `\section`) and is assigned a label (via `\label`). The label is formed from

`\glsautoprefix`

`\glsautoprefix <type>`

where `<type>` is the label identifying that glossary. The default value of `\glsautoprefix` is empty. For example, if you load glossaries using:

```
\usepackage[section,numberedsection=autolabel]
{glossaries}
```

then each glossary will appear in a numbered section, and can be referenced using something like:

The main glossary is in `section~\ref{main}` and the list of acronyms is in `section~\ref{acronym}`.

If you can't decide whether to have the acronyms in the main glossary or a separate list of acronyms, you can use `\acronymtype` which is set to `main` if the `acronym` option is not used and is set to `acronym` if the `acronym` option is used. For example:

The list of acronyms is in `section~\ref{\acronymtype}`.

2 Package Options

You can redefine the prefix if the default label clashes with another label in your document. For example:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsautoprefix}{glo:}
```

will add `glo:` to the automatically generated label, so you can then, for example, refer to the list of acronyms as follows:

```
The list of acronyms is in  
section~\ref{glo:\acronymtype}.
```

Or, if you are undecided on a prefix:

```
The list of acronyms is in  
section~\ref{\glsautoprefix\acronymtype}.
```

- **nameref:** this is like `autolabel` but uses an unnumbered sectioning command (e.g. `\chapter*` or `\section*`). It's designed for use with the `nameref` package. For example:

```
\usepackage{nameref}  
\usepackage[numberedsection=nameref]{glossaries}
```

Now `\nameref{main}` will display the (TOC) section title associated with the `main` glossary. As above, you can redefine `\glsautoprefix` to provide a prefix for the label.

2.3 Glossary Appearance Options

entrycounter This is a boolean option. (Default is `entrycounter=false`.)

`glossaryentry` If set, each main (level 0) glossary entry will be numbered when using the standard glossary styles. This option creates the counter `glossaryentry`.

If you use this option, you can reference the entry number within the document using

`\glsrefentry`

```
\glsrefentry{<label>}
```

where `<label>` is the label associated with that glossary entry.

If you use `\glsrefentry`, you must run \LaTeX twice after creating the glossary files using `makeglossaries`, `makeindex` or `xindy` to ensure the cross-references are up-to-date.

2 Package Options

counterwithin This is a $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ option where $\langle value \rangle$ is the name of a counter. If used, this option will automatically set `entrycounter=true` and the `glossaryentry` counter will be reset every time $\langle value \rangle$ is incremented.

The `glossaryentry` counter isn't automatically reset at the start of each glossary, except when glossary section numbering is on and the counter used by `counterwithin` is the same as the counter used in the glossary's sectioning command.

If you want the counter reset at the start of each glossary, you can redefine `\glossarypreamble` to use

`\glsresetentrycounter`

`\glsresetentrycounter`

which sets `glossaryentry` to zero:

```
\renewcommand{\glossarypreamble}{%
  \glsresetentrycounter
}
```

or if you are using `\setglossarypreamble`, add it to each glossary preamble, as required. For example:

```
\setglossarypreamble[acronym]{%
  \glsresetentrycounter
  The preamble text here for the list of acronyms.
}
\setglossarypreamble{%
  \glsresetentrycounter
  The preamble text here for the main glossary.
}
```

subentrycounter This is a boolean option. (Default is `subentrycounter=false`.)

`glossarysubentry`

If set, each level 1 glossary entry will be numbered when using the standard glossary styles. This option creates the counter `glossarysubentry`. The counter is reset with each main (level 0) entry. Note that this package option is independent of `entrycounter`. You can reference the number within the document using `\glsrefentry{\langle label \rangle}` where $\langle label \rangle$ is the label associated with the sub-entry.

style This is a $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ option. (Default is `style=list`.) Its value should be the name of the glossary style to use. This key

2 Package Options

may only be used for styles defined in `glossary-list`, `glossary-long`, `glossary-super` or `glossary-tree`. Alternatively, you can set the style using

```
\setglossarystyle{<style name>}
```

(See Section 15 for further details.)

nolong This prevents the `glossaries` package from automatically loading `glossary-long` (which means that the `longtable` package also won't be loaded). This reduces overhead by not defining unwanted styles and commands. Note that if you use this option, you won't be able to use any of the glossary styles defined in the `glossary-long` package (unless you explicitly load `glossary-long`).

nosuper This prevents the `glossaries` package from automatically loading `glossary-super` (which means that the `supertabular` package also won't be loaded). This reduces overhead by not defining unwanted styles and commands. Note that if you use this option, you won't be able to use any of the glossary styles defined in the `glossary-super` package (unless you explicitly load `glossary-super`).

nolist This prevents the `glossaries` package from automatically loading `glossary-list`. This reduces overhead by not defining unwanted styles. Note that if you use this option, you won't be able to use any of the glossary styles defined in the `glossary-list` package (unless you explicitly load `glossary-list`). Note that since the default style is `list`, you will also need to use the `style` option to set the style to something else.

notree This prevents the `glossaries` package from automatically loading `glossary-tree`. This reduces overhead by not defining unwanted styles. Note that if you use this option, you won't be able to use any of the glossary styles defined in the `glossary-tree` package (unless you explicitly load `glossary-tree`).

nostyles This prevents all the predefined styles from being loaded. If you use this option, you need to load a glossary style package (such as `glossary-mcols`). Also if you use this option, you can't use the `style` package option. Instead you must either use `\setglossarystyle{<style>}` or the `style` key in the optional argument to `\printglossary`. Example:

```
\usepackage[nostyles]{glossaries}
```

2 Package Options

```
\usepackage{glossary-mcols}  
\setglossarystyle{mcoltree}
```

nonumberlist This option will suppress the associated **number lists** in the glossaries (see also Section 5).

seeautonumberlist If you suppress the **number lists** with `nonumberlist`, described above, this will also suppress any cross-referencing information supplied by the `see` key in `\newglossaryentry` or `\glssee`. If you use `seeautonumberlist`, the `see` key will automatically implement `nonumberlist=false` for that entry. (Note this doesn't affect `\glssee`.) For further details see Section 8.

counter This is a $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ option. (Default is `counter=page`.) The value should be the name of the default counter to use in the **number lists** (see Section 5).

nopostdot This is a boolean option. If no value is specified, `true` is assumed. When set to `true`, this option suppresses the default post description dot used by some of the predefined styles. The default setting is `nopostdot=false`.

nogroupskip This is a boolean option. If no value is specified, `true` is assumed. When set to `true`, this option suppresses the default vertical gap between groups used by some of the predefined styles. The default setting is `nogroupskip=false`.

2.4 Sorting Options

sort If you use Options 2 or 3, this package option is the only way of specifying how to sort the glossaries. Only **Option 1** allows you to specify sort methods for individual glossaries via the `sort` key in the optional argument of `\printnoidxglossary`. If you have multiple glossaries in your document and you are using **Option 1**, only use `sort=def` or `sort=use` if you want to set this sort method for *all* your glossaries.

This is a $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ option where $\langle value \rangle$ may be one of the following:

- `standard` : entries are sorted according to the value of the sort key used in `\newglossaryentry` (if present) or the name key (if sort key is missing);
- `def` : entries are sorted in the order in which they were defined (the sort key in `\newglossaryentry` is ignored);

2 Package Options

- `use` : entries are sorted according to the order in which they are used in the document (the sort key in `\newglossaryentry` is ignored).

Both `sort=def` and `sort=use` set the sort key to a six digit number via

`\glssortnumberfmt`

```
\glssortnumberfmt{⟨number⟩}
```

(padded with leading zeros, where necessary). This can be redefined, if required, before the entries are defined (in the case of `sort=def`) or before the entries are used (in the case of `sort=use`).

The default is `sort=standard`. When the standard sort option is in use, you can hook into the sort mechanism by redefining:

`\glsprestandardsort`

```
\glsprestandardsort{⟨sort cs⟩}{⟨type⟩}{⟨label⟩}
```

where `⟨sort cs⟩` is a temporary control sequence that stores the sort value (which was either explicitly set via the sort key or implicitly set via the name key) before any escaping of the `makeindex/xindy` special characters is performed. By default `\glsprestandardsort` just does:

`\glsdosanitizesort`

```
\glsdosanitizesort
```

which **sanitizes** `⟨sort cs⟩` if the `sanitizesort` package option is set (or does nothing if the package option `sanitizesort=false` is used).

The other arguments, `⟨type⟩` and `⟨label⟩`, are the glossary type and the entry label for the current entry. Note that `⟨type⟩` will always be a control sequence, but `⟨label⟩` will be in the form used in the first argument of `\newglossaryentry`.

Redefining `\glsprestandardsort` won't affect any entries that have already been defined and will have no effect at all if you are using `sort=def` or `sort=use`.

Example 1 (Mixing Alphabetical and Order of Definition)

2 Package Options

Sorting)

Suppose I have three glossaries: `main`, `acronym` and `notation`, and let's suppose I want the `main` and `acronym` glossaries to be sorted alphabetically, but the `notation` type should be sorted in order of definition.

For **Option 1**, I just need to set the sort key in the optional argument of `\printnoidxglossary`:

```
\printnoidxglossary[sort=word]
\printnoidxglossary[type=acronym, sort=word]
\printnoidxglossary[type=notation, sort=def]
```

For Options **2** or **3**, I can set the sort to `standard` (which is the default, but can be explicitly set via the package option `sort=standard`), and I can either define all my `main` and `acronym` entries, then redefine `\glsprestandardsort` to set $\langle sort\ cs \rangle$ to an incremented integer, and then define all my `notation` entries. Alternatively, I can redefine `\glsprestandardsort` to check for the glossary type and only modify $\langle sort\ cs \rangle$ if $\langle type \rangle$ is `notation`.

The first option can be achieved as follows:

```
\newcounter{sortcount}

\renewcommand{\glsprestandardsort}[3]{%
  \stepcounter{sortcount}%
  \edef#1{\glssortnumberfmt{\arabic{sortcount}}}%
}
```

The second option can be achieved as follows:

```
\newcounter{sortcount}

\renewcommand{\glsprestandardsort}[3]{%
  \ifdefstring{#2}{notation}%
  {%
    \stepcounter{sortcount}%
    \edef#1{\glssortnumberfmt{\arabic{sortcount}}}%
  }%
  {%
    \glsdosanitizesort
  }%
}
```

(`\ifdefstring` is defined by the `etoolbox` package.) For a complete document, see the sample file `sampleSort.tex`.

Example 2 (Customizing Standard Sort (Options 2 or 3))

Suppose you want a glossary of people and you want the names listed as *<first-name> <surname>* in the glossary, but you want the names sorted by *<surname>, <first-name>*. You can do this by defining a command called, say, `\name{<first-name>}{<surname>}` that you can use in the name key when you define the entry, but hook into the standard sort mechanism to temporarily redefine `\name` while the sort value is being set.

First, define two commands to set the person's name:

```
\newcommand{\sortname}[2]{#2, #1}
\newcommand{\textname}[2]{#1 #2}
```

and `\name` needs to be initialised to `\textname`:

```
\let\name\textname
```

Now redefine `\glsprestandardsort` so that it temporarily sets `\name` to `\sortname` and expands the sort value, then sets `\name` to `\textname` so that the person's name appears as *<first-name> <surname>* in the text:

```
\renewcommand{\glsprestandardsort}[3]{%
  \let\name\sortname
  \edef#1{\expandafter\expandonce\expandafter{#1}}%
  \let\name\textname
  \glsdosanitizesort
}
```

(The somewhat complicate use of `\expandafter` etc helps to protect fragile commands, but care is still needed.)

Now the entries can be defined:

```
\newglossaryentry{joebloggs}{name={\name{Joe}{Bloggs}},
  description={some information about Joe Bloggs}}

\newglossaryentry{johnsmith}{name={\name{John}{Smith}},
  description={some information about John Smith}}
```

For a complete document, see the sample file `samplePeople.tex`.

2 Package Options

order This may take two values: word or letter. The default is word ordering.

Note that the order option has no effect if you don't use `makeglossaries`.

If you use **Option 1**, this setting will be used if you use `sort=standard` in the optional argument of `\printnoidxglossary`:

```
\printnoidxglossary[sort=standard]
```

Alternatively, you can specify the order for individual glossaries:

```
\printnoidxglossary[sort=word]
\printnoidxglossary[type=acronym, sort=letter]
```

makeindex (**Option 2**) The glossary information and indexing style file will be written in `makeindex` format. If you use `makeglossaries`, it will automatically detect that it needs to call `makeindex`. If you don't use `makeglossaries`, you need to remember to use `makeindex` not `xindy`. The indexing style file will be given a `.ist` extension.

You may omit this package option if you are using **Option 2** as this is the default. It's available in case you need to override the effect of an earlier occurrence of `xindy` in the package option list.

xindy (**Option 3**) The glossary information and indexing style file will be written in `xindy` format. If you use `makeglossaries`, it will automatically detect that it needs to call `xindy`. If you don't use `makeglossaries`, you need to remember to use `xindy` not `makeindex`. The indexing style file will be given a `.xdy` extension.

This package option may additionally have a value that is a $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ comma-separated list to override the language and codepage. For example:

```
\usepackage[xindy={language=english,codepage=utf8}]
{glossaries}
```

You can also specify whether you want a number group in the glossary. This defaults to true, but can be suppressed. For example:

```
\usepackage[xindy={glsnumbers=false}]{glossaries}
```

2 Package Options

If no value is supplied to this package option (either simply writing `xindy` or writing `xindy={}`) then the language, code-page and number group settings are unchanged. See Section 11 for further details on using `xindy` with the glossaries package.

xindygloss (Option 3) This is equivalent to `xindy={}` (that is, the `xindy` option without any value supplied) and may be used as a document class option. The language and code page can be set via `\GlsSetXdyLanguage` and `\GlsSetXdyCodePage` (see Section 11.1.)

xindynoglsnumbers (Option 3) This is equivalent to `xindy={glsnumbers=false}` and may be used as a document class option.

2.5 Acronym Options

acronym This creates a new glossary with the label `acronym`. This is equivalent to:

```
\newglossary[alg]{acronym}{acr}{acn}{\acronymname}
```

It will also define

`\printacronyms`

```
\printacronyms[<options>]
```

that's equivalent to

```
\printglossary[type=acronym,<options>]
```

(unless that command is already defined before the beginning of the document or the package option `compatible-3.07` is used).

If you are using Option 1, you need to use

```
\printnoidxglossary[type=acronym,<options>]
```

to display the list of acronyms.

If the `acronym` package option is used, `\acronymtype` is set to `acronym` otherwise it is set to `main`.³ Entries that are defined using `\newacronym` are placed in the glossary whose label is

³Actually it sets `\acronymtype` to `\glsdefaulttype` if the `acronym` package option is not used, but `\glsdefaulttype` usually has the value `main` unless the `nomain` option has been used.

2 Package Options

given by `\acronymtype`, unless another glossary is explicitly specified.

Remember to use the `nomain` package option if you're only interested in using this `acronym` glossary.

acronyms This is equivalent to `acronym=true` and may be used in the document class option list.

acronymlists By default, only the `\acronymtype` glossary is considered to be a list of acronyms. If you have other lists of acronyms, you can specify them as a comma-separated list in the value of `acronymlists`. For example, if you use the `acronym` package option but you also want the `main` glossary to also contain a list of acronyms, you can do:

```
\usepackage[acronym,acronymlists={main}]{glossaries}
```

No check is performed to determine if the listed glossaries exist, so you can add glossaries you haven't defined yet. For example:

```
\usepackage[acronym,acronymlists={main,acronym2}]{glossaries}
\newglossary[alg2]{acronym2}{acr2}{acn2}%
{Statistical Acronyms}
```

You can use

`\DeclareAcronymList`

`\DeclareAcronymList{<list>}`

instead of or in addition to the `acronymlists` option. This will add the glossaries given in `<list>` to the list of glossaries that are identified as lists of acronyms. To replace the list of acronym lists with a new list use:

`\SetAcronymLists`

`\SetAcronymLists{<list>}`

You can determine if a glossary has been identified as being a list of acronyms using:

`\glsIfListOfAcronyms`

`\glsIfListOfAcronyms{<label>}{<true part>}{<false part>}`

2 Package Options

shortcuts This option provides shortcut commands for acronyms. See Section 13 for further details. Alternatively you can use:

`\DefineAcronymShortcuts`

`\DefineAcronymShortcuts`

2.5.1 Deprecated Acronym Style Options

The package options listed in this section are now deprecated but are kept for backward-compatibility. Use `\setacronymstyle` instead. See Section 13 for further details.

description This option changes the definition of `\newacronym` to allow a description. This option may be replaced by

`\setacronymstyle{long-short-desc}`

or (with `smallcaps`)

`\setacronymstyle{long-sc-short-desc}`

or (with `smaller`)

`\setacronymstyle{long-sm-short-desc}`

or (with `footnote`)

`\setacronymstyle{footnote-desc}`

or (with `footnote` and `smallcaps`)

`\setacronymstyle{footnote-sc-desc}`

or (with `footnote` and `smaller`)

`\setacronymstyle{footnote-sm-desc}`

or (with `dua`)

`\setacronymstyle{dua-desc}`

smallcaps This option changes the definition of `\newacronym` and the way that acronyms are displayed. This option may be replaced by:

`\setacronymstyle{long-sc-short}`

2 Package Options

or (with description)

```
\setacronymstyle{long-sc-short-desc}
```

or (with description and footnote)

```
\setacronymstyle{footnote-sc-desc}
```

smaller This option changes the definition of `\newacronym` and the way that acronyms are displayed.

If you use this option, you will need to include the `relsize` package or otherwise define `\textsmaller` or redefine `\acronymfont`.

This option may be replaced by:

```
\setacronymstyle{long-sm-short}
```

or (with description)

```
\setacronymstyle{long-sm-short-desc}
```

or (with description and footnote)

```
\setacronymstyle{footnote-sm-desc}
```

footnote This option changes the definition of `\newacronym` and the way that acronyms are displayed. This option may be replaced by:

```
\setacronymstyle{footnote}
```

or (with smallcaps)

```
\setacronymstyle{footnote-sc}
```

or (with smaller)

```
\setacronymstyle{footnote-sm}
```

or (with description)

```
\setacronymstyle{footnote-desc}
```

2 Package Options

or (with smallcaps and description)

```
\setacronymstyle{footnote-sc-desc}
```

or (with smaller and description)

```
\setacronymstyle{footnote-sm-desc}
```

dua This option changes the definition of `\newacronym` so that acronyms are always expanded. This option may be replaced by:

```
\setacronymstyle{dua}
```

or (with description)

```
\setacronymstyle{dua-desc}
```

2.6 Other Options

Other available options that don't fit any of the above categories are:

symbols This option defines a new glossary type with the label `symbols` via

```
\newglossary[slg]{symbols}{sls}{slo}{\glssymbolsgroupname}
```

It also defines

`\printsymbols`

```
\printsymbols[<options>]
```

which is a synonym for

```
\printglossary[type=symbols,<options>]
```

If you use **Option 1**, you need to use:

```
\printnoidxglossary[type=symbols,<options>]
```

to display the list of symbols.

Remember to use the `nomain` package option if you're only interested in using this `symbols` glossary.

2 Package Options

numbers This option defines a new glossary type with the label `numbers` via

```
\newglossary[nlg]{numbers}{nls}{nlo}{\glsnumbersgroupname}
```

It also defines

`\printnumbers`

```
\printnumbers[<options>]
```

which is a synonym for

```
\printglossary[type=numbers, <options>]
```

If you use **Option 1**, you need to use:

```
\printnoidxglossary[type=numbers, <options>]
```

to display the list of numbers.

Remember to use the `nomain` package option if you're only interested in using this `numbers` glossary.

index This option defines a new glossary type with the label `index` via

```
\newglossary[ilg]{index}{ind}{idx}{\indexname}%
```

It also defines

`\newterm`

```
\newterm[<options>]{<term>}
```

which is a synonym for

```
\newglossaryentry{<term>}[type=index, name={<term>}, %  
description=\nopostdesc, <options>]
```

and

`\printindex`

```
\printindex[<options>]
```

which is a synonym for

2 Package Options

```
\printglossary[type=index, <options>]
```

If you use **Option 1**, you need to use:

```
\printnoidxglossary[type=index, <options>]
```

to display this glossary.

Remember to use the `nomain` package option if you're only interested in using this `index` glossary. Note that you can't mix this option with `\index`. Either use glossaries for the indexing or use a custom indexing package, such as `makeidx`, `index` or `imakeidx`. (You can, of course, load one of those packages and load glossaries without the `index` package option.)

Since the `index` isn't designed for terms with descriptions, you might also want to disable the hyperlinks for this glossary using the package option `nohypertypes=index` or the command

```
\GlsDeclareNoHyperList{index}
```

The example file `sample-index.tex` illustrates the use of the `index` package option.

compatible-2.07 Compatibility mode for old documents created using version 2.07 or below.

compatible-3.07 Compatibility mode for old documents created using version 3.07 or below.

2.7 Setting Options After the Package is Loaded

Some of the options described above may also be set after the glossaries package has been loaded using

```
\setupglossaries
```

```
\setupglossaries{<key-val list>}
```

The following package options **can't** be used in `\setupglossaries`: `xindy`, `xindygloss`, `xindynoglsnumbers`, `makeindex`, `nolong`, `nosuper`, `nolist`, `notree`, `nostyles`, `nomain`, `compatible-2.07`, `translate`, `notranslate`, `acronym`.

2 Package Options

These options have to be set while the package is loading, except for the `xindy` sub-options which can be set using commands like `\GlsSetXdyLanguage` (see Section 11 for further details).

If you need to use this command, use it as soon as possible after loading glossaries otherwise you might end up using it too late for the change to take effect. For example, if you try changing the acronym styles (such as `smallcaps`) after you have started defining your acronyms, you are likely to get unexpected results. If you try changing the sort option after you have started to define entries, you may get unexpected results.

3 Setting Up

In the preamble you need to indicate whether you want to use **Option 1**, **Option 2** or **Option 3**. It's not possible to mix these options within a document.

3.1 Option 1

The command

`\makenoidxglossaries`

```
\makenoidxglossaries
```

must be placed in the preamble. This sets up the internal commands required to make **Option 1** work. **If you omit `\makenoidxglossaries` none of the glossaries will be displayed.**

3.2 Options 2 and 3

The command

`\makeglossaries`

```
\makeglossaries
```

must be placed in the preamble in order to create the customised **makeindex** (.ist) or **xindy** (.xdy) style file (for Options 2 or 3, respectively) and to ensure that glossary entries are written to the appropriate output files. **If you omit `\makeglossaries` none of the glossary files will be created.**

Note that some of the commands provided by the glossaries package must not be used after `\makeglossaries` as they are required when creating the customised style file. If you attempt to use those commands after `\makeglossaries` you will generate an error.

Similarly, there are some commands that must not be used before `\makeglossaries`.

You can suppress the creation of the customised **xindy** or **makeindex** style file using

3 Setting Up

`\noist`

That this command must not be used after `\makeglossaries`.

Note that if you have a custom `.xdy` file created when using glossaries version 2.07 or below, you will need to use the `compatible-2.07` package option with it.

The default name for the customised style file is given by `\jobname.ist` ([Option 2](#)) or `\jobname.xdy` ([Option 3](#)). This name may be changed using:

`\setStyleFile` `\setStyleFile{<name>}`

where *<name>* is the name of the style file without the extension. Note that this command must not be used after `\makeglossaries`.

Each glossary entry is assigned a **number list** that lists all the locations in the document where that entry was used. By default, the location refers to the page number but this may be overridden using the `counter` package option. The default form of the location number assumes a full stop compositor (e.g. 1.2), but if your location numbers use a different compositor (e.g. 1-2) you need to set this using

`\glsSetCompositor` `\glsSetCompositor{<symbol>}`

For example:

```
\glsSetCompositor{-}
```

This command must not be used after `\makeglossaries`.

If you use [Option 3](#), you can have a different compositor for page numbers starting with an upper case alphabetical character using:

`\glsSetAlphaCompositor` `\glsSetAlphaCompositor{<symbol>}`

This command has no effect if you use [Option 2](#). For example, if you want **number lists** containing a mixture of A-1 and 2.3 style formats, then do:

```
\glsSetCompositor{.}\glsSetAlphaCompositor{-}
```

See [Section 5](#) for further information about **number lists**.

4 Defining Glossary Entries

All glossary entries must be defined before they are used, so it is better to define them in the preamble to ensure this. In fact, some commands such as `\longnewglossaryentry` may only be used in the preamble. See Section 4.8 for a discussion of the problems with defining entries within the document instead of in the preamble.

Option 1 enforces the preamble-only restriction on `\newglossaryentry`.

Only those entries that are referenced in the document (using any of the commands described in Section 6, Section 7 or Section 8) will appear in the glossary. See Section 10 to find out how to display the glossary.

New glossary entries are defined using the command:

`\newglossaryentry`

```
\newglossaryentry{<label>}{<key=value list>}
```

This is a short command, so values in *<key-val list>* can't contain any paragraph breaks. If you have a long description that needs to span multiple paragraphs, use

`\longnewglossaryentry`

```
\longnewglossaryentry{<label>}{<key=value list>}{<long
description>}
```

instead. Note that this command may only be used in the preamble. Be careful of unwanted spaces. `\longnewglossaryentry` will remove trailing spaces in the description (via `\unskip`) but won't remove leading spaces (otherwise it would interfere with commands like `\Glsentrydesc`).

There are also commands that will only define the entry if it hasn't already been defined:

`\provideglossaryentry`

```
\provideglossaryentry{<label>}{<key=value list>}
```

and

`\longprovideglossaryentry`

4 Defining Glossary Entries

```
\longprovideglossaryentry{⟨label⟩}{⟨key=value list⟩}{⟨long  
description⟩}
```

(These are both preamble-only commands.)

For all the above commands, the first argument, *⟨label⟩*, must be a unique label with which to identify this entry. This can't contain any non-expandable commands or active characters.

Note that although an **extended Latin character** or other **non-Latin character**, such as é or ß, looks like a plain character in your .tex file, it's actually a macro (an active character) and therefore can't be used in the label. Also be careful of babel's options that change certain punctuation characters (such as : or -) to active characters.

The second argument, *⟨key=value list⟩*, is a *⟨key⟩=⟨value⟩* list that supplies the relevant information about this entry. There are two required fields: description and either name or parent. The description is set in the third argument of `\longnewglossaryentry` and `\longprovideglossaryentry`. With the other commands it's set via the description key. Available fields are listed below:

name The name of the entry (as it will appear in the glossary). If this key is omitted and the parent key is supplied, this value will be the same as the parent's name.

description A brief description of this term (to appear in the glossary). Within this value, you can use

`\nopostdesc`

```
\nopostdesc
```

to suppress the description terminator for this entry. For example, if this entry is a parent entry that doesn't require a description, you can do `description={\nopostdesc}`. If you want a paragraph break in the description use

`\glspar`

```
\glspar
```

or, better, use `\longnewglossaryentry`. However, note that not all glossary styles support multi-line descriptions. If you are using one of the tabular-like glossary styles that permit multi-line descriptions, use `\newline` not `\\` if you want to force a line break.

4 Defining Glossary Entries

parent The label of the parent entry. Note that the parent entry must be defined before its sub-entries. See Section 4.5 for further details.

descriptionplural The plural form of the description, if required. If omitted, the value is set to the same as the description key.

text How this entry will appear in the document text when using `\gls` (or one of its upper case variants). If this field is omitted, the value of the name key is used.

first How the entry will appear in the document text on **first use** with `\gls` (or one of its upper case variants). If this field is omitted, the value of the text key is used. Note that if you use `\glspl`, `\Glspl`, `\GLSpl`, `\glsdisp` before using `\gls`, the `firstplural` value won't be used with `\gls`.

plural How the entry will appear in the document text when using `\glspl` (or one of its upper case variants). If this field is omitted, the value is obtained by appending `\glspluralsuffix` to the value of the text field. The default value of `\glspluralsuffix` is the letter "s".

firstplural How the entry will appear in the document text on **first use** with `\glspl` (or one of its upper case variants). If this field is omitted, the value is obtained from the plural key, if the first key is omitted, or by appending `\glspluralsuffix` to the value of the first field, if the first field is present. Note that if you use `\gls`, `\Gls`, `\GLS`, `\glsdisp` before using `\glspl`, the `firstplural` value won't be used with `\glspl`.

Note: prior to version 1.13, the default value of `firstplural` was always taken by appending "s" to the first key, which meant that you had to specify both plural and `firstplural`, even if you hadn't used the first key.

symbol This field is provided to allow the user to specify an associated symbol. If omitted, the value is set to `\relax`. Note that not all glossary styles display the symbol.

symbolplural This is the plural form of the symbol (as passed to `\glsdisplay` and `\glsdisplayfirst` by `\glspl`, `\Glspl` and `\GLSpl`). If omitted, the value is set to the same as the symbol key.

sort This value indicates how this entry should be sorted. If omitted, the value is given by the name field unless one of the package options `sort=def` and `sort=use` have been used. In general,

4 Defining Glossary Entries

it's best to use the sort key if the name contains commands (e.g. `\ensuremath{\alpha}`). You can also override the sort key by redefining `\glsprestandardsort` (see Section 2.4).

Option 1 by default strips the **standard L^AT_EX accents** (that is, accents generated by core L^AT_EX commands) from the name key when it sets the sort key. So with **Option 1**:

```
\newglossaryentry{elite}{%
  name={{\'e}lite},
  description={select group of people}
}
```

This is equivalent to:

```
\newglossaryentry{elite}{%
  name={{\'e}lite},
  description={select group of people},
  sort={elite}
}
```

Unless you use the package option `sanitizesort=true`, in which case it's equivalent to:

```
\newglossaryentry{elite}{%
  name={{\'e}lite},
  description={select group of people},
  sort={{\'e}lite}
}
```

This will place the entry before the “A” letter group since the sort value starts with a symbol.

Similarly if you use the `inputenc` package:

```
\newglossaryentry{elite}{%
  name={{é}lite},
  description={select group of people}
}
```

This is equivalent to

```
\newglossaryentry{elite}{%
  name={{é}lite},
  description={select group of people},
  sort=elite
}
```

4 Defining Glossary Entries

Unless you use the package option `sanitizesort=true`, in which case it's equivalent to:

```
\newglossaryentry{elite}{%
  name={{é}lite},
  description={select group of people},
  sort=élite
}
```

Again, this will place the entry before the “A” group.

With Options 2 and 3, the default value of `sort` will either be set to the name key (if `sanitizesort=true`) or it will set it to the expansion of the name key (if `sanitizesort=false`).

Take care with `xindy` (Option 3): if you have entries with the same sort value they will be treated as the same entry. Take care if you use Option 1 and the name contains fragile commands. You will either need to explicitly set the sort key or use the `sanitizesort=true` package option (unless you use the `def` or `use sort` methods).

type This specifies the label of the glossary in which this entry belongs. If omitted, the default glossary is assumed unless `\newacronym` is used (see Section 13).

user1, ..., user6 Six keys provided for any additional information the user may want to specify. (For example, an associated dimension or an alternative plural or some other grammatical construct.) Alternatively, you can add new keys using `\glsaddkey` (see Section 4.3). Other keys are also provided by the `glossaries-prefix` (Section 17) and `glossaries-accsupp` (Section 18) packages.

nonumberlist A boolean key. If the value is missing or is `true`, this will suppress the **number list** just for this entry. Conversely, if you have used the package option `nonumberlist`, you can activate the number list just for this entry with `nonumberlist=false`. (See Section 5.)

see Cross-reference another entry. Using the `see` key will automatically add this entry to the glossary, but will not automatically add the cross-referenced entry. The referenced entry should be supplied as the value to this key. If you want to override the

4 Defining Glossary Entries

“see” tag, you can supply the new tag in square brackets before the label. For example `see=[see also]{anotherlabel}`. **Note that if you have suppressed the `number list`, the cross-referencing information won’t appear in the glossary, as it forms part of the number list.** You can override this for individual glossary entries using `nonumberlist=false` (see above). Alternatively, you can use the `seeautonumberlist` package option. For further details, see Section 8.

For Options 2 and 3, `\makeglossaries` must be used before any occurrence of `\newglossaryentry` that contains the see key.

The following keys are reserved for `\newacronym` (see Section 13): `long`, `longplural`, `short` and `shortplural`. Additional keys are provided by the `glossaries-prefix` (Section 17) and the `glossaries-accsupp` (Section 18) packages. You can also define your own custom keys (see Section 4.3).

Note that if the name starts with **non-Latin character**, you must group the character, otherwise it will cause a problem for commands like `\Gls` and `\Glspl`. For example:

```
\newglossaryentry{elite}{name={{\'}elite},
description={select group or class}}
```

Note that the same applies if you are using the `inputenc` package:

```
\newglossaryentry{elite}{name={{é}lite},
description={select group or class}}
```

Note that in both of the above examples, you will also need to supply the sort key if you are using **Option 2** whereas **xindy** (**Option 3**) is usually able to sort **non-Latin characters** correctly. **Option 1** discards accents from **standard L^AT_EX extended Latin characters** unless you use the `sanitizesort=true`.

4.1 Plurals

You may have noticed from above that you can specify the plural form when you define a term. If you omit this, the plural will be obtained by appending

`\glspluralsuffix`

`\glspluralsuffix`

4 Defining Glossary Entries

to the singular form. This command defaults to the letter “s”. For example:

```
\newglossaryentry{cow}{name=cow,description={a fully grown female of any bovine animal}}
```

defines a new entry whose singular form is “cow” and plural form is “cows”. However, if you are writing in archaic English, you may want to use “kine” as the plural form, in which case you would have to do:

```
\newglossaryentry{cow}{name=cow,plural=kine,description={a fully grown female of any bovine animal}}
```

If you are writing in a language that supports multiple plurals (for a given term) then use the plural key for one of them and one of the user keys to specify the other plural form. For example:

```
\newglossaryentry{cow}{%name=cow,%description={a fully grown female of any bovine animal(plural cows, archaic plural kine)},%user1={kine}}
```

You can then use `\glspl{cow}` to produce “cows” and `\glsuseri{cow}` to produce “kine”. You can, of course, define an easy to remember synonym. For example:

```
\let\glsaltpl\glsuseri
```

Then you don’t have to remember which key you used to store the second plural. Alternatively, you can define your own keys using `\glsaddkey`, described in Section 4.3.

If you are using a language that usually forms plurals by appending a different letter, or sequence of letters, you can redefine `\glspluralsuffix` as required. However, this must be done *before* the entries are defined. For languages that don’t form plurals by simply appending a suffix, all the plural forms must be specified using the plural key (and the firstplural key where necessary).

4.2 Other Grammatical Constructs

You can use the six user keys to provide alternatives, such as participles. For example:

```
\let\glsing\glsuseri
\let\glsd\glsuserii
```

4 Defining Glossary Entries

```
\newcommand*\ingkey{user1}
\newcommand*\edkey{user2}

\newcommand*\newword[3][ ]{%
  \newglossaryentry{#2}{%
    name={#2},%
    description={#3},%
    \edkey={#2ed},%
    \ingkey={#2ing},#1%
  }%
}
```

With the above definitions, I can now define terms like this:

```
\newword{play}{to take part in activities for enjoyment}
\newword[\edkey={ran},\ingkey={running}]{run}{to move fast using
the legs}
```

and use them in the text:

Peter is \glsing{play} in the park today.

Jane \glsd{play} in the park yesterday.

Peter and Jane \glsd{run} in the park last week.

Alternatively, you can define your own keys using \glsaddkey, described below in Section 4.3.

4.3 Additional Keys

You can now also define your own custom keys using:

\glsaddkey

```
\glsaddkey{<key>}{<default value>}{<no link cs>}{<no link ucfirst
cs>}{<link cs>}{<link ucfirst cs>}{<link allcaps cs>}
```

where:

<key> is the new key to use in \newglossaryentry (or similar commands such as \longnewglossaryentry);

<default value> is the default value to use if this key isn't used in an entry definition (this may reference the current entry label via \glslabel, but you will have to switch on expansion via the starred version of \glsaddkey and protect fragile commands);

<no link cs> is the control sequence to use analogous to commands like \glsentrytext;

4 Defining Glossary Entries

\langle *no link ucfirst cs* \rangle is the control sequence to use analogous to commands like `\Glsentrytext`;

\langle *link cs* \rangle is the control sequence to use analogous to commands like `\glstext`;

\langle *link ucfirst cs* \rangle is the control sequence to use analogous to commands like `\Glstext`;

\langle *link allcaps cs* \rangle is the control sequence to use analogous to commands like `\GLStext`.

The starred version of `\glsaddkey` switches on expansion for this key. The unstarred version doesn't override the current expansion setting.

Example 3 (Defining Custom Keys)

Suppose I want to define two new keys, `ed` and `ing`, that default to the entry text followed by “ed” and “ing”, respectively. The default value will need expanding in both cases, so I need to use the starred form:

```
% Define "ed" key:
\glsaddkey*
{ed}% key
{\glsentrytext{\glslabel}ed}% default value
{\glsentryed}% command analogous to \glsentrytext
{\Glsentryed}% command analogous to \Glsentrytext
{\glsed}% command analogous to \glstext
{\Glsed}% command analogous to \Glstext
{\GLSed}% command analogous to \GLStext

% Define "ing" key:
\glsaddkey*
{ing}% key
{\glsentrytext{\glslabel}ing}% default value
{\glsentrying}% command analogous to \glsentrytext
{\Glsentrying}% command analogous to \Glsentrytext
{\glsing}% command analogous to \glstext
{\Glsing}% command analogous to \Glstext
{\GLSing}% command analogous to \GLStext
```

Now I can define some entries:

```
% No need to override defaults for this entry:

\newglossaryentry{jump}{name={jump},description={}}
```

4 Defining Glossary Entries

% Need to override defaults on these entries:

```
\newglossaryentry{run}{name={run},%  
  ed={ran},%  
  ing={running},%  
  description={}}  
  
\newglossaryentry{waddle}{name={waddle},%  
  ed={waddled},%  
  ing={waddling},%  
  description={}}
```

These entries can later be used in the document:

The dog \glsed{jump} over the duck.

The duck was \glsing{waddle} round the dog.

The dog \glsed{run} away from the duck.

For a complete document, see the sample file [sample-newkeys.tex](#).

4.4 Expansion

When you define new glossary entries expansion is performed by default, except for the name, description, descriptionplural, symbol, symbolplural and sort keys (these keys all have expansion suppressed via `\glsetnoexpandfield`).

You can switch expansion on or off for individual keys using

`\glsetexpandfield`

`\glsetexpandfield{<field>}`

or

`\glsetnoexpandfield`

`\glsetnoexpandfield{<field>}`

respectively, where `<field>` is the field tag corresponding to the key. In most cases, this is the same as the name of the key except for those listed in [table 4.1](#).

Any keys that haven't had the expansion explicitly set using `\glsetexpandfield` or `\glsetnoexpandfield` are governed by

`\glsexpandfields`

`\glsexpandfields`

4 Defining Glossary Entries

Table 4.1: Key to Field Mappings

Key	Field
sort	sortvalue
firstplural	firstpl
description	desc
descriptionplural	descplural
user1	useri
user2	userii
user3	useriii
user4	useriv
user5	userv
user6	uservi
longplural	longpl
shortplural	shortpl

and

`\glsnoexpandfields`

`\glsnoexpandfields`

If your entries contain any fragile commands, I recommend you switch off expansion via `\glsnoexpandfields`. (This should be used before you define the entries.)

4.5 Sub-Entries

As from version 1.17, it is possible to specify sub-entries. These may be used to order the glossary into categories, in which case the sub-entry will have a different name to its parent entry, or it may be used to distinguish different definitions for the same word, in which case the sub-entries will have the same name as the parent entry. Note that not all glossary styles support hierarchical entries and may display all the entries in a flat format. Of the styles that support sub-entries, some display the sub-entry's name whilst others don't. Therefore you need to ensure that you use a suitable style. (See Section 15 for a list of predefined styles.) As from version 3.0, level 1 sub-entries are automatically numbered in the predefined styles if you use the `subentrycounter` package option (see Section 2.3 for further details).

Note that the parent entry will automatically be added to the glossary if any of its child entries are used in the document. If the parent entry is not referenced in the document, it will not have a **number list**. Note also that `makeindex` has a restriction on the maximum sub-entry depth.

4.5.1 Hierarchical Categories

To arrange a glossary with hierarchical categories, you need to first define the category and then define the sub-entries using the relevant category entry as the value of the parent key.

Example 4 (Hierarchical Categories—Greek and Roman Mathematical Symbols)

Suppose I want a glossary of mathematical symbols that are divided into Greek letters and Roman letters. Then I can define the categories as follows:

```
\newglossaryentry{greekletter}{name={Greek letters},  
description={\nopostdesc}}
```

```
\newglossaryentry{romanletter}{name={Roman letters},  
description={\nopostdesc}}
```

Note that in this example, the category entries don't need a description so I have set the descriptions to `\nopostdesc`. This gives a blank description and suppresses the description terminator.

I can now define my sub-entries as follows:

```
\newglossaryentry{pi}{name={\ensuremath{\pi}}, sort={pi},  
description={ratio of the circumference of a circle to  
the diameter},  
parent=greekletter}
```

```
\newglossaryentry{C}{name={\ensuremath{C}}, sort={C},  
description={Euler's constant},  
parent=romanletter}
```

For a complete document, see the sample file `sampletree.tex`.

4.5.2 Homographs

Sub-entries that have the same name as the parent entry, don't need to have the name key. For example, the word "glossary" can mean a list of technical words or a collection of glosses. In both cases the plural is "glossaries". So first define the parent entry:

```
\newglossaryentry{glossary}{name=glossary,  
description={\nopostdesc},  
plural={glossaries}}
```

4 Defining Glossary Entries

Again, the parent entry has no description, so the description terminator needs to be suppressed using `\nopostdesc`.

Now define the two different meanings of the word:

```
\newglossaryentry{glossarylist}{  
  description={list of technical words},  
  sort={1},  
  parent={glossary}}
```

```
\newglossaryentry{glossarycol}{  
  description={collection of glosses},  
  sort={2},  
  parent={glossary}}
```

Note that if I reference the parent entry, the location will be added to the parent's **number list**, whereas if I reference any of the child entries, the location will be added to the child entry's number list. Note also that since the sub-entries have the same name, the sort key is required unless you are using the `sort=use` or `sort=def` package options (see Section 2.4). You can use the `subentrycounter` package option to automatically number the first-level child entries. See Section 2.3 for further details.

In the above example, the plural form for both of the child entries is the same as the parent entry, so the plural key was not required for the child entries. However, if the sub-entries have different plurals, they will need to be specified. For example:

```
\newglossaryentry{bravo}{name={bravo},  
  description={\nopostdesc}}
```

```
\newglossaryentry{bravocry}{description={cry of approval  
(pl.\ bravos)},  
  sort={1},  
  plural={bravos},  
  parent=bravo}
```

```
\newglossaryentry{bravoruffian}{description={hired  
ruffian or killer (pl.\ bravo)},  
  sort={2},  
  plural={bravo},  
  parent=bravo}
```

4.6 Loading Entries From a File

You can store all your glossary entry definitions in another file and use:

4 Defining Glossary Entries

`\loadglsentries` `\loadglsentries[<type>]{<filename>}`

where *<filename>* is the name of the file containing all the `\newglossaryentry` or `\longnewglossaryentry` commands. The optional argument *<type>* is the name of the glossary to which those entries should belong, for those entries where the `type` key has been omitted (or, more specifically, for those entries whose `type` has been specified by `\glsdefaulttype`, which is what `\newglossaryentry` uses by default).

This is a preamble-only command. You may also use `\input` to load the file but don't use `\include`.

Example 5 (Loading Entries from Another File)

Suppose I have a file called `myentries.tex` which contains:

```
\newglossaryentry{perl}{type=main,
name={Perl},
description={A scripting language}}

\newglossaryentry{tex}{name={\TeX},
description={A typesetting language},sort={TeX}}

\newglossaryentry{html}{type=\glsdefaulttype,
name={html},
description={A mark up language}}
```

and suppose in my document preamble I use the command:

```
\loadglsentries[languages]{myentries}
```

then this will add the entries `tex` and `html` to the glossary whose `type` is given by `languages`, but the entry `perl` will be added to the main glossary, since it explicitly sets the `type` to `main`.

Note: if you use `\newacronym` (see Section 13) the `type` is set as `type=\acronymtype` unless you explicitly override it. For example, if my file `myacronyms.tex` contains:

```
\newacronym{aca}{aca}{a contrived acronym}
```

then (supposing I have defined a new glossary type called `altacronym`)

```
\loadglsentries[altacronym]{myacronyms}
```

4 Defining Glossary Entries

will add `aca` to the glossary type `acronym`, if the package option `acronym` has been specified, or will add `aca` to the glossary type `altacronym`, if the package option `acronym` is not specified.¹

If you have used the `acronym` package option, there are two possible solutions to this problem:

1. Change `myacronyms.tex` so that entries are defined in the form:

```
\newacronym[type=\glsdefaulttype]{aca}{aca}{a  
contrived acronym}
```

and do:

```
\loadglsentries[altacronym]{myacronyms}
```

2. Temporarily change `\acronymtype` to the target glossary:

```
\let\orgacronymtype\acronymtype  
\renewcommand{\acronymtype}{altacronym}  
\loadglsentries{myacronyms}  
\let\acronymtype\orgacronymtype
```

Note that only those entries that have been used in the text will appear in the relevant glossaries. Note also that `\loadglsentries` may only be used in the preamble.

Remember that you can use `\provideglossaryentry` rather than `\newglossaryentry`. Suppose you want to maintain a large database of acronyms or terms that you're likely to use in your documents, but you may want to use a modified version of some of those entries. (Suppose, for example, one document may require a more detailed description.) Then if you define the entries using `\provideglossaryentry` in your database file, you can override the definition by simply using `\newglossaryentry` before loading the file. For example, suppose your file (called, say, `terms.tex`) contains:

```
\provideglossaryentry{mallard}{name=mallard,  
description={a type of duck}}
```

but suppose your document requires a more detailed description, you can do:

```
\usepackage{glossaries}
```

¹This is because `\acronymtype` is set to `\glsdefaulttype` if the `acronym` package option is not used.

4 Defining Glossary Entries

```
\makeglossaries

\newglossaryentry{mallard}{name=mallard,
  description={a dabbling duck where the male has a green head}}

\loadglsentries{terms}
```

Now the mallard definition in the `terms.tex` file will be ignored.

4.7 Moving Entries to Another Glossary

As from version 3.02, you can move an entry from one glossary to another using:

`\glsmoveentry`

```
\glsmoveentry{<label>}{<target glossary label>}
```

where `<label>` is the unique label identifying the required entry and `<target glossary label>` is the unique label identifying the glossary in which to put the entry.

Note that no check is performed to determine the existence of the target glossary. This means that you can, for example, move an entry to an undefined glossary so you can use the entry in the document text but not have it listed in any of the glossaries. (Maybe you have an acronym that is so common it doesn't need listing.)

If you move an entry to an undefined glossary and you have hyperlinked entries, the link will point to an undefined target. (Unless you identify that glossary using `nohypertypes` or `\GlsDeclareNoHyperList`, as described in Section 6.) Also, you will get warnings about no file defined for that glossary (unless you use the `nowarn` package option). Unpredictable results may occur if you move an entry to a different glossary from its parent or children.

4.8 Drawbacks With Defining Entries in the Document Environment

Originally, `\newglossaryentry` (and `\newacronym`) could only be used in the preamble. I reluctantly removed this restriction in version 1.13, but there are issues with defining commands in the document environment instead of the preamble, which is why the restric-

tion is maintained for newer commands. This restriction is also reimposed for `\newglossaryentry` by the new [Option 1](#).

4.8.1 Technical Issues

1. If you define an entry mid-way through your document, but subsequently shuffle sections around, you could end up using an entry before it has been defined.
2. Entry information is required when displaying the glossary. If this occur at the start of the document, the entry details are being looked up before the entry has been defined.

To overcome these problems, as from version 4.0 the glossaries package modifies the definition of `\newglossaryentry` at the beginning of the document environment so that the definitions are written to an external file (`\jobname.glsdefs`) which is then read in at the start of the document on the next run. The entry will then only be defined in the document environment if it doesn't already exist. This means that the entry can now be looked up in the glossary, even if the glossary occurs at the beginning of the document.

There are drawbacks to this mechanism: if you modify an entry definition, you need a second run to see the effect of your modification; this method requires an extra `\newwrite`, which may exceed TeX's maximum allocation; unexpected expansion issues could occur; if you have very long entries, you could find unexpected line breaks have been written to the temporary file causing spurious spaces (or, even worse, a command name could get split across a line causing an error message).

The last reason is why `\longnewglossaryentry` has the preamble-only restriction, which I don't intend to lift.

4.8.2 Good Practice Issues

The above section covers technical issues that can cause your document to have compilation errors or produce incorrect output. This section focuses on good writing practice. The main reason cited by users wanting to define entries within the document environment rather than in the preamble is that they want to write the definition as they type in their document text. This suggests a "stream of consciousness" style of writing that may be acceptable in certain literary genres but is inappropriate for factual documents.

When you write technical documents, regardless of whether it's a PhD thesis or an article for a journal or proceedings, you must plan

4 Defining Glossary Entries

what you write in advance. If you plan in advance, you should have a fairly good idea of the type of terminology that your document will contain, so while you are planning, create a new file with all your entry definitions. If, while you're writing your document, you remember another term you need, then you can switch over to your definition file and add it. Most text editors have the ability to have more than one file open at a time. The other advantage to this approach is that if you forget the label, you can look it up in the definition file rather than searching through your document text to find the definition.

5 Number lists

Each entry in the glossary has an associated **number list**. By default, these numbers refer to the pages on which that entry has been used (using any of the commands described in Section 6 and Section 7). The number list can be suppressed using the `nonumberlist` package option, or an alternative counter can be set as the default using the `counter` package option. The number list is also referred to as the location list.

Both `makeindex` and `xindy` (Options 2 and 3) concatenate a sequence of 3 or more consecutive pages into a range. With `xindy` (Option 3) you can vary the minimum sequence length using `\GlsSetXdyMinRangeLength` where $\langle n \rangle$ is either an integer or the keyword `none` which indicates that there should be no range formation.

Note that `\GlsSetXdyMinRangeLength` must be used before `\makeglossaries` and has no effect if `\noist` is used.

With both `makeindex` and `xindy` (Options 2 and 3), you can replace the separator and the closing number in the range using:

`\glsSetSuffixF`

`\glsSetSuffixF{ $\langle suffix \rangle$ }`

`\glsSetSuffixFF`

`\glsSetSuffixFF{ $\langle suffix \rangle$ }`

where the former command specifies the suffix to use for a 2 page list and the latter specifies the suffix to use for longer lists. For example:

```
\glsSetSuffixF{f.}
\glsSetSuffixFF{ff.}
```

Note that if you use `xindy` (Option 3), you will also need to set the minimum range length to 1 if you want to change these suffixes:

```
\GlsSetXdyMinRangeLength{1}
```

Note that if you use the `hyperref` package, you will need to use `\nohyperpage` in the suffix to ensure that the hyperlinks work correctly. For example:

5 Number lists

```
\glsSetSuffixF{\nohyperpage{f.}}
\glsSetSuffixFF{\nohyperpage{ff.}}
```

Note that `\glsSetSuffixF` and `\glsSetSuffixFF` must be used before `\makeglossaries` and have no effect if `\noist` is used.

Option 1 doesn't form ranges. However, with this option you can iterate over an entry's **number list** using:

```
\glsnumberlistloop \glsnumberlistloop{<label>}{<handler cs>}{<xr handler cs>}
```

where `<label>` is the entry's label and `<handler cs>` is a handler control sequence of the form:

```
<handler cs>{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}
```

where `<prefix>` is the hyperref prefix, `<counter>` is the name of the counter used for the location, `<format>` is the format used to display the location (e.g. `textbf`) and `<location>` is the location. The third argument is the control sequence to use for any cross-references in the list. This handler should have the syntax:

```
<xr handler cs>[<tag>]{<xr list>}
```

where `<tag>` is the cross-referenced text (e.g. "see") and `<xr list>` is a comma-separated list of labels. (This actually has a third argument but it's always empty when used with **Option 1**.)

For example, if on page 12 I have used

```
\gls[format=textbf]{apple}
```

and on page 18 I have used

```
\gls[format=emph]{apple}
```

then

```
\glsnumberlistloop{apple}{\myhandler}
```

will be equivalent to:

```
\myhandler{}{page}{textbf}{12}%
\myhandler{}{page}{emph}{18}%
```

5 Number lists

There is a predefined handler that's used to display the **number list** in the glossary:

`\glsnoidxdisplayloc`

```
\glsnoidxdisplayloc{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}
```

The predefined handler used for the cross-references in the glossary is:

```
\glsseeformat[<tag>]{<xr list>}{<location>}
```

which is described in Section 8.1.

`\glsnumberlistloop` is not available for Options 2 and 3.

6 Links to Glossary Entries

Once you have defined a glossary entry using `\newglossaryentry`, you can refer to that entry in the document using one of the commands listed in this section. The text which appears at that point in the document when using one of these commands is referred to as the **link text** (even if there are no hyperlinks). The commands in this section also add a line to an external file that is used to generate the relevant entry in the glossary. This information includes an associated location that is added to the **number list** for that entry. By default, the location refers to the page number. For further information on number lists, see Section 5.

It is strongly recommended that you don't use the commands defined in this section in the arguments of sectioning or caption commands or any other command that has a moving argument.

The above warning is particularly important if you are using the `glossaries` package in conjunction with the `hyperref` package. Instead, use one of the *expandable* commands listed in Section 9 (such as `\glsentrytext` *but not* the non-expandable case changing versions like `\Glsentrytext`) or provide an alternative via the optional argument to the sectioning/caption command. Examples:

```
\chapter{An overview of \glsentrytext{perl}}
\chapter[An overview of Perl]{An overview of \gls{perl}}
```

If you want the **link text** to produce a hyperlink to the corresponding entry details in the glossary, you should load the `hyperref` package *before* the `glossaries` package. That's what I've done in this document, so if you see a hyperlinked term, such as **link text**, you can click on the word or phrase and it will take you to a brief description in this document's glossary.

If you use the `hyperref` package, I strongly recommend you use `pdflatex` rather than `latex` to compile your document, if possible. The DVI format of \LaTeX has limitations with the hyperlinks that can cause a problem when used with the `glossaries` package. Firstly, the DVI format can't break a hyperlink across a line whereas \PDFLaTeX can. This means that long glossary entries (for example, the full form of an acronym) won't be able to break across a line with the DVI format. Secondly, the DVI format doesn't correctly size hyperlinks in subscripts or superscripts. This means that if you define a term that may be used as a subscript or superscript, if you use the DVI format, it won't come out the correct size.

It may be that you only want terms in certain glossaries to have links, but not for other glossaries. In this case, you can use the package option `nohypertypes` to identify the glossary lists that shouldn't have hyperlinked [link text](#). For example, suppose your document contains lots of technical acronyms that the reader might not know, but it also contains some very common acronyms that most readers will recognise. So you might want two acronym lists, but only the technical list will get displayed in your document. The technical acronyms can be hyperlinked to that list, but common acronyms shouldn't have hyperlinks as there's no target for them. In this case, identify the common acronym list as having non-hyperlinked entries using `nohypertypes`. Example:

```
\usepackage[acronym,nohypertypes={common}]{glossaries}
\newglossary{common}{cacr}{cacn}{Common Acronyms}
```

Alternatively, you can use

`\GlsDeclareNoHyperList`

`\GlsDeclareNoHyperList{<type>}`

For example:

```
\usepackage[acronym]{glossaries}
\newglossary{common}{cacr}{cacn}{Common Acronyms}
\GlsDeclareNoHyperList{common}
```

Note that no check is performed to see if the glossary types listed in `nohypertypes` or `\GlsDeclareNoHyperList` have been defined.

The values must be fully expanded, so **don't** try `nohypertypes=\acronymtype` or `\GlsDeclareNoHyperList{\acronymtype}`. Also, avoid unnecessary braces. For example, `\GlsDeclareNoHyperList{{acronym},{common}}` won't work. You do however need an enclosing brace for the whole list when using the package option. So `\usepackage[nohypertypes={acronym,common}]{glossaries}` is correct, but `nohypertypes={{acronym},{common}}` won't work.

You can override the effect of `nohypertypes` or `\GlsDeclareNoHyperList` by explicitly setting the hyper option in commands such as `\glslink` or `\gls`.

The way the **link text** is displayed depends on

`\glstextformat`

`\glstextformat{<text>}`

For example, to make all **link text** appear in a sans-serif font, do:

```
\renewcommand*{\glstextformat}[1]{\textsf{#1}}
```

Further customisation can be done via `\defglentryfmt` or by re-defining `\glentryfmt`. See Section 6.1 for further details.

Each entry has an associated conditional referred to as the **first use flag**. This determines whether `\gls` or `\glspl` (or their upper case variants) should use the value of the `first/firstplural` or `text/plural` keys. Note that an entry can be used without affecting the **first use flag** (for example, when used with `\glslink`). See Section 14 for commands that unset or reset this conditional.

The command:

`\glslink`

`\glslink[<options>]{<label>}{<text>}`

will place `\glstextformat{<text>}` in the document at that point and add a line into the associated glossary file for the glossary entry given by `<label>`. If hyperlinks are supported, `<text>` will be a hyperlink to the relevant line in the glossary. (Note that this command doesn't affect the **first use flag**: use `\glsdisp` instead.) The optional argument `<options>` must be a `<key>=<value>` list which can take any of the following keys:

format This specifies how to format the associated location number for this entry in the glossary. This value is equivalent to the

6 Links to Glossary Entries

`makeindex` encap value, and (as with `\index`) the value needs to be the name of a command *without* the initial backslash. As with `\index`, the characters (and) can also be used to specify the beginning and ending of a number range. Again as with `\index`, the command should be the name of a command which takes an argument (which will be the associated location). Be careful not to use a declaration (such as `bfseries`) instead of a text block command (such as `textbf`) as the effect is not guaranteed to be localised. If you want to apply more than one style to a given entry (e.g. **bold** and *italic*) you will need to create a command that applies both formats, e.g.

```
\newcommand*{\textbfem}[1]{\textbf{\emph{#1}}}
```

and use that command.

In this document, the standard formats refer to the standard text block commands such as `\textbf` or `\emph` or any of the commands listed in [table 6.1](#).

If you use `xindy` instead of `makeindex`, you must specify any non-standard formats that you want to use with the format key using `\GlsAddXdyAttribute{<name>}`. So if you use `xindy` with the above example, you would need to add:

```
\GlsAddXdyAttribute{textbfem}
```

See [Section 11](#) for further details.

Note that unlike `\index`, you can't have anything following the command name, such as an asterisk or arguments. If you want to cross-reference another entry, either use the `see` key when you define the entry or use `\glssee` (described in [Section 8](#)).

If you are using hyperlinks and you want to change the font of the hyperlinked location, don't use `\hyperpage` (provided by the `hyperref` package) as the locations may not refer to a page number. Instead, the `glossaries` package provides number formats listed in [table 6.1](#).

Note that if the `\hyperlink` command hasn't been defined, the `hyper<xx>` formats are equivalent to the analogous `text<xx>` font commands (and `hyperemph` is equivalent to `emph`). If you want to make a new format, you will need to define a command which takes one argument and use that. For example, if you

6 Links to Glossary Entries

Table 6.1: Predefined Hyperlinked Location Formats

<code>hyperrm</code>	serif hyperlink
<code>hypersf</code>	sans-serif hyperlink
<code>hypertt</code>	monospaced hyperlink
<code>hyperbf</code>	bold hyperlink
<code>hypermd</code>	medium weight hyperlink
<code>hyperit</code>	italic hyperlink
<code>hypersl</code>	slanted hyperlink
<code>hyperup</code>	upright hyperlink
<code>hypersc</code>	small caps hyperlink
<code>hyperemph</code>	emphasized hyperlink

want the location number to be in a bold sans-serif font, you can define a command called, say, `\hyperbsf`:

```
\newcommand{\hyperbsf}[1]{\textbf{\hypersf{#1}}}
```

and then use `hyperbsf` as the value for the format key. (See also section 1.15 “Displaying the glossary” in the documented code, `glossaries-code.pdf`.) Remember that if you use `xindy`, you will need to add this to the list of location attributes:

```
\GlsAddXdyAttribute{hyperbsf}
```

counter This specifies which counter to use for this location. This overrides the default counter used by this entry. (See also Section 5.)

hyper This is a boolean key which can be used to enable/disable the hyperlink to the relevant entry in the glossary. (Note that setting `hyper=true` will have no effect if `\hyperlink` has not been defined.) The default value is `hyper=true`, unless the entry belongs to a glossary that either has been listed in the package option `nohypertypes` or has been identified using `\GlsDeclareNoHyperList` in which case the default is `hyper=false`.

local This is a boolean key that only makes a difference when used with commands that change the entry’s **first use flag** (such as `\gls`). If `local=true`, the change to the first use flag will be localised to the current scope. The default is `local=false`.

6 Links to Glossary Entries

There is also a starred version:

`\glslink*` `\glslink*[\langle options \rangle]{\langle label \rangle}{\langle text \rangle}`

which is equivalent to `\glslink`, except it sets `hyper=false`. Similarly, all the following commands described in this section also have a starred version that disables the hyperlink.

Don't use commands like `\glslink` or `\gls` in the `\langle text \rangle` argument of `\glslink`.

The command:

`\gls` `\gls[\langle options \rangle]{\langle label \rangle}[\langle insert \rangle]`

is the same as `\glslink`, except that the **link text** is determined from the values of the text and first keys supplied when the entry was defined using `\newglossaryentry`. If the entry has been marked as having been used, the value of the text key will be used, otherwise the value of the first key will be used. On completion, `\gls` will mark the entry's **first use flag** as used.

There are two upper case variants:

`\Gls` `\Gls[\langle options \rangle]{\langle label \rangle}[\langle insert \rangle]`

and

`\GLS` `\GLS[\langle options \rangle]{\langle label \rangle}[\langle insert \rangle]`

which make the first letter of the link text or all the link text upper case, respectively.

The final optional argument `\langle insert \rangle`, allows you to insert some additional text into the link text. By default, this will append `\langle insert \rangle` at the end of the link text, but this can be changed (see Section 6.1).

The first optional argument `\langle options \rangle` is the same as the optional argument to `\glslink`. As with `\glslink`, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink.

Don't use commands like `\glslink` or `\gls` in the `\langle insert \rangle` argument of `\gls` and its variants.

There are also analogous plural forms:

6 Links to Glossary Entries

`\glspl` `\glspl[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]`

`\Glspl` `\Glspl[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]`

`\GLSpl` `\GLSpl[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]`

These determine the link text from the plural and firstplural keys supplied when the entry was first defined. As before, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink.

Be careful when you use glossary entries in math mode especially if you are using `hyperref` as it can affect the spacing of subscripts and superscripts. For example, suppose you have defined the following entry:

```
\newglossaryentry{Falpha}{name={F_\alpha},
description=sample}
```

and later you use it in math mode:

```
$\gls{Falpha}^2$
```

This will result in F_{α}^2 instead of F_{α}^2 . In this situation it's best to bring the superscript into the hyperlink using the final `<insert>` optional argument:

```
$\gls{Falpha}[^2]$
```

Note that `\glslink` doesn't use or affect the **first use flag**, nor does it use `\glsentryfmt` or the equivalent definition provided by `\defglsentryfmt` (see Section 6.1). Instead, you can use:

`\glsdisp` `\glsdisp[<options>]{<label>}{<link text>}`

This behaves in the same way as `\gls`, except that it uses `<link text>` instead of the value of the first or text key. (Note that this command always sets `<insert>` to nothing.) This command affects the **first use flag**, and uses `\glsentryfmt` or the equivalent definition provided by `\defglsentryfmt`.

The command:

`\glstext` `\glstext[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]`

6 Links to Glossary Entries

is similar to `\gls` except that it always uses the value of the text key and does not affect the **first use flag**. Unlike `\gls`, the inserted text `<insert>` is always appended to the link text since `\glstext` doesn't use `\glsentryfmt` or the equivalent definition provided by `\defglsentryfmt`. (The same is true for all the following commands described in the rest of this section.)

There are also analogous commands:

`\Glstext` `\Glstext [<options>] { <text> } [<insert>]`

`\GLStext` `\GLStext [<options>] { <text> } [<insert>]`

As before, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink.

The command:

`\glsfirst` `\glsfirst [<options>] { <label> } [<insert>]`

is similar to `\glstext` except that it always uses the value of the first key. Again, `<insert>` is always appended to the end of the link text and does not affect the **first use flag**.

There are also analogous commands:

`\Glsfirst` `\Glsfirst [<options>] { <text> } [<insert>]`

`\GLSfirst` `\GLSfirst [<options>] { <text> } [<insert>]`

As before, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink.

The command:

`\glsplural` `\glsplural [<options>] { <label> } [<insert>]`

is similar to `\glstext` except that it always uses the value of the plural key. Again, `<insert>` is always appended to the end of the link text and does not mark the entry as having been used.

There are also analogous commands:

`\Glsplural` `\Glsplural [<options>] { <text> } [<insert>]`

6 Links to Glossary Entries

`\GLSplural`

```
\GLSplural[⟨options⟩]{⟨text⟩}[⟨insert⟩]
```

As before, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink.

The command:

`\glsfirstplural`

```
\glsfirstplural[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]
```

is similar to `\gls{text}` except that it always uses the value of the `firstplural` key. Again, `⟨insert⟩` is always appended to the end of the link text and does not mark the entry as having been used.

There are also analogous commands:

`\Glsfirstplural`

```
\Glsfirstplural[⟨options⟩]{⟨text⟩}[⟨insert⟩]
```

`\GLSfirstplural`

```
\GLSfirstplural[⟨options⟩]{⟨text⟩}[⟨insert⟩]
```

As before, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink.

The command:

`\glsname`

```
\glsname[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]
```

is similar to `\gls{text}` except that it always uses the value of the `name` key. Again, `⟨insert⟩` is always appended to the end of the link text and does not mark the entry as having been used.

There are also analogous commands:

`\Glsname`

```
\Glsname[⟨options⟩]{⟨text⟩}[⟨insert⟩]
```

`\GLSname`

```
\GLSname[⟨options⟩]{⟨text⟩}[⟨insert⟩]
```

As before, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink.

The command:

`\glssymbol`

```
\glssymbol[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]
```

is similar to `\gls{text}` except that it always uses the value of the `symbol` key. Again, `⟨insert⟩` is always appended to the end of the link text and does not mark the entry as having been used.

6 Links to Glossary Entries

There are also analogous commands:

`\Glssymbol` `\Glssymbol [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

`\GLSsymbol` `\GLSsymbol [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

As before, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink.

The command:

`\glsdesc` `\glsdesc [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

is similar to `\glstext` except that it always uses the value of the description key. Again, `⟨insert⟩` is always appended to the end of the link text and does not mark the entry as having been used.

There are also analogous commands:

`\Glsdesc` `\Glsdesc [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

`\GLSdesc` `\GLSdesc [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

As before, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink.

The command:

`\glsuseri` `\glsuseri [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

is similar to `\glstext` except that it always uses the value of the user1 key. Again, `⟨insert⟩` is always appended to the end of the link text and does not mark the entry as having been used.

There are also analogous commands:

`\Glsuseri` `\Glsuseri [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

`\GLSuseri` `\GLSuseri [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

As before, these commands also have a starred version that disable the hyperlink. Similarly for the other user keys:

`\glsuserii` `\glsuserii [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

6 Links to Glossary Entries

<code>\Glsuserii</code>	<code>\Glsuserii [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\GLSuserii</code>	<code>\GLSuserii [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\glsuseriii</code>	<code>\glsuseriii [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\Glsuseriii</code>	<code>\Glsuseriii [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\GLSuseriii</code>	<code>\GLSuseriii [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\glsuseriv</code>	<code>\glsuseriv [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\Glsuseriv</code>	<code>\Glsuseriv [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\GLSuseriv</code>	<code>\GLSuseriv [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\glsuserv</code>	<code>\glsuserv [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\Glsuserv</code>	<code>\Glsuserv [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\GLSuserv</code>	<code>\GLSuserv [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\glsuservi</code>	<code>\glsuservi [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\Glsuservi</code>	<code>\Glsuservi [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>
<code>\GLSuservi</code>	<code>\GLSuservi [⟨options⟩] {⟨text⟩} [⟨insert⟩]</code>

6.1 Changing the format of the link text

The default format of the **link text** for `\gls`, `\glspl` and their upper case variants and also for `\glsdisp` is governed by¹:

`\glsentryfmt`

```
\glsentryfmt
```

This may be redefined but if you only want to change the display style for a given glossary, then you need to use

`\defglsentryfmt`

```
\defglsentryfmt [⟨type⟩] {⟨definition⟩}
```

instead of redefining `\glsentryfmt`. The optional first argument *⟨type⟩* is the glossary type. This defaults to `\glsdefaulttype` if omitted. The second argument is the entry format definition.

Note that `\glsentryfmt` is the default display format for entries. Once the display format has been changed for an individual glossary using `\defglsentryfmt`, redefining `\glsentryfmt` won't have an effect on that glossary, you must instead use `\defglsentryfmt` again. Note that glossaries that have been identified as lists of acronyms (via the package option `acronymlists` or the command `\DeclareAcronymList`, see Section 2.5) use `\defglsentryfmt` to set their display style.

Within the *⟨definition⟩* argument of `\defglsentryfmt`, or if you want to redefine `\glsentryfmt`, you may use the following commands:

`\glslabel`

```
\glslabel
```

This is the label of the entry being referenced.

`\glscustomtext`

```
\glscustomtext
```

This is the custom text supplied in `\glsdisp`. It's always empty for `\gls`, `\glspl` and their upper case variants. (You can use `etoolbox`'s `\ifdefempty` to determine if `\glscustomtext` is empty.)

`\glsinsert`

```
\glsinsert
```

¹`\glsdisplayfirst` and `\glsdisplay` are now deprecated. Backwards compatibility should be preserved but you may need to use the `compatible-3.07` option

6 Links to Glossary Entries

The custom text supplied in the final optional argument to `\gls`, `\glspl` and their upper case variants.

`\glsifplural` `\glsifplural{⟨true text⟩}{⟨false text⟩}`

If `\glspl`, `\Glspl` or `\GLSpl` was used, this command does `⟨true text⟩` otherwise it does `⟨false text⟩`.

`\glscapscase` `\glscapscase{⟨no case⟩}{⟨first uc⟩}{⟨all caps⟩}`

If `\gls`, `\glspl` or `\glsdisp` were used, this does `⟨no case⟩`. If `\Gls` or `\Glspl` were used, this does `⟨first uc⟩`. If `\GLS` or `\GLSpl` were used, this does `⟨all caps⟩`.

Note that you can also use commands such as `\ifglsused` within the definition of `\glsentryfmt` (see Section 14).

If you only want to make minor modifications to `\glsentryfmt`, you can use

`\glsgenentryfmt` `\glsgenentryfmt`

This uses the above commands to display just the first, text, plural or firstplural keys (or the custom text) with the insert text appended.

Alternatively, if want to change the entry format for acronyms (defined via `\newacronym`) you can use:

`\glsgenacfmt` `\glsgenacfmt`

This uses the values from the long, short, longplural and shortplural keys, rather than using the text, plural, first and firstplural keys. The first use singular text is obtained via:

`\genacrfullformat` `\genacrfullformat{⟨label⟩}{⟨insert⟩}`

instead of from the first key, and the first use plural text is obtained via:

`\genplacrfullformat` `\genplacrfullformat{⟨label⟩}{⟨insert⟩}`

instead of from the firstplural key. In both cases, `⟨label⟩` is the entry's label and `⟨insert⟩` is the insert text provided in the final optional argument of commands like `\gls`. The default behaviour is to do the long form (or plural long form) followed by `⟨insert⟩` and a space and the short form (or plural short form) in parentheses, where the short

6 Links to Glossary Entries

form is in the argument of `\firstacronymfont`. There are also first letter upper case versions:

`\Genacrfullformat`

```
\Genacrfullformat{<label>}{<insert>}
```

and

`\Genplacrfullformat`

```
\Genplacrfullformat{<label>}{<insert>}
```

By default these perform a protected expansion on their no-case-change equivalents and then use `\makefirstuc` to convert the first character to upper case. If there are issues caused by this expansion, you will need to redefine those commands to explicitly use commands like `\Glsentrylong` (which is what the predefined acronym styles, such as long-short, do). Otherwise, you only need to redefine `\genacrfullformat` and `\genplacrfullformat` to change the behaviour of `\glsgenacfmt`. See Section 13 for further details on changing the style of acronyms.

Note that `\glentryfmt` is not used by `\glslink` or any of the other commands, such as `\glstext`.

Example 6 (Custom Entry Display in Text)

Suppose you want a glossary of measurements and units, you can use the symbol key to store the unit:

```
\newglossaryentry{distance}{name=distance,
description={The length between two points},
symbol={km}}
```

and now suppose you want `\gls{distance}` to produce “distance (km)” on first use, then you can redefine `\glentryfmt` as follows:

```
\renewcommand*{\glentryfmt}{%
  \glsgenentryfmt
  \ifglsused{\glslabel}{}{\space (\glentrysymbol{\glslabel})}%
}
```

(Note that I’ve used `\glentrysymbol` rather than `\glsymbol` to avoid nested hyperlinks.)

Note also that all of the link text will be formatted according to `\glstextformat` (described earlier). So if you do, say:

```
\renewcommand{\glstextformat}[1]{\textbf{#1}}
\renewcommand*{\glentryfmt}{%
```

6 Links to Glossary Entries

```
\glsgenentryfmt
\ifglused{\glslabel}{}{\space\glsentrysymbol{\glslabel}}}%
}
```

then `\gls{distance}` will produce “**distance (km)**”.

For a complete document, see the sample file `sample-entryfmt.tex`.

Example 7 (Custom Format for Particular Glossary)

Suppose you have created a new glossary called `notation` and you want to change the way the entry is displayed on **first use** so that it includes the symbol, you can do:

```
\defglsgenentryfmt[notation]{\glsgenentryfmt
\ifglused{\glslabel}{}{\space
(denoted \glsentrysymbol{\glslabel})}}
```

Now suppose you have defined an entry as follows:

```
\newglossaryentry{set}{type=notation,
name=set,
description={A collection of objects},
symbol={$S$}}
}
```

The **first time** you reference this entry it will be displayed as: “set (denoted S)” (assuming `\gls` was used).

Alternatively, if you expect all the symbols to be set in math mode, you can do:

```
\defglsgenentryfmt[notation]{\glsgenentryfmt
\ifglused{\glslabel}{}{\space
(denoted  $\glsentrysymbol{\glslabel}$ )}}
```

and define entries like this:

```
\newglossaryentry{set}{type=notation,
name=set,
description={A collection of objects},
symbol={S}}
}
```

Remember that if you use the `symbol` key, you need to use a glossary style that displays the symbol, as many of the styles ignore it.

6.2 Enabling and disabling hyperlinks to glossary entries

If you load the `hyperref` or `html` packages prior to loading the `glossaries` package, commands such as `\glslink` and `\gls`, described above, will automatically have hyperlinks to the relevant glossary entry, unless the `hyper` option has been set to `false`. You can disable or enable links using:

`\glsdisablehyper`

`\glsdisablehyper`

and

`\glsenablehyper`

`\glsenablehyper`

respectively. The effect can be localised by placing the commands within a group. Note that you should only use `\glsenablehyper` if the commands `\hyperlink` and `\hypertarget` have been defined (for example, by the `hyperref` package).

You can disable just the **first use** links using the package option `hyperfirst=false`. Note that this option only affects commands that recognise the **first use flag**, for example `\gls`, `\glspl` and `\glsdisp` but not `\glslink`.

Example 8 (First Use With Hyperlinked Footnote Description)

Suppose I want the first use to have a hyperlink to the description in a footnote instead of hyperlinking to the relevant place in the glossary. First I need to disable the hyperlinks on first use via the package option `hyperfirst=false`:

```
\usepackage[hyperfirst=false]{glossaries}
```

Now I need to redefine `\glsentryfmt` (see Section 6.1):

```
\renewcommand*{\glsentryfmt}{%
  \glsгенentryfmt
  \ifglsused{\glslabel}{}{\footnote{\glsentrydesc{\glslabel}}}%
}
```

Now the first use won't have hyperlinked text, but will be followed by a footnote. See the sample file `sample-FnDesc.tex` for a complete document.

Note that the `hyperfirst` option applies to all defined glossaries. It may be that you only want to disable the hyperlinks on **first use** for glossaries that have a different form on first use. This can be achieved by noting that since the entries that require hyperlinking for all instances have identical first and subsequent text, they can be unset via `\glsunsetall` (see Section 14) so that the `hyperfirst` option doesn't get applied.

Example 9 (Suppressing Hyperlinks on First Use Just For Acronyms)

Suppose I want to suppress the hyperlink on **first use** for acronyms but not for entries in the main glossary. I can load the glossaries package using:

```
\usepackage[hyperfirst=false,acronym]{glossaries}
```

Once all glossary entries have been defined I then do:

```
\glsunsetall[main]
```

For more complex requirements, you might find it easier to switch off all hyperlinks via `\glsdisablehyper` and put the hyperlinks (where required) within the definition of `\glsentryfmt` (see Section 6.1) via `\glshyperlink` (see Section 9).

Example 10 (Only Hyperlink in Text Mode Not Math Mode)

This is a bit of a contrived example, but suppose, for some reason, I only want commands like `\gls` and `\glsdisp` to have hyperlinks when used in text mode, but not in math mode. I can do this by disabling all hyperlinks and redefining `\glsentryfmt`:

```
\glsdisablehyper
\renewcommand*{\glsentryfmt}{%
  \ifmmode
    \glsgenentryfmt
  \else
    % Temporarily enable hyperlinks:
    \glsenablehyper
    \glshyperlink[\glsgenentryfmt]{\glslabel}%
    % Disable hyperlinks again
    \glsdisablehyper
  \fi
}
```

6 *Links to Glossary Entries*

To ensure the target exists, the hyperlinks must be enabled again when the glossary is displayed:

```
\renewcommand{\glossarypreamble}{\glsenablehyper}  
\renewcommand{\glossarypostamble}{\glsdisablehyper}
```

(The redefinition of `\glossarypostamble` is only necessary if the glossary is displayed at the start of the document instead of at the end.) See the sample file `sample-nomathhyper.tex` for a complete document.

7 Adding an Entry to the Glossary Without Generating Text

It is possible to add a line in the glossary file without generating any text at that point in the document using:

```
\glsadd \glsadd[<options>]{<label>}
```

This is similar to `\glslink`, only it doesn't produce any text (so therefore, there is no hyper key available in *<options>* but all the other options that can be used with `\glslink` can be passed to `\glsadd`). For example, to add a page range to the glossary number list for the entry whose label is given by `set`:

```
\glsadd[format=]{set}
Lots of text about sets spanning many pages.
\glsadd[format=]{set}
```

To add all entries that have been defined, use:

```
\glsaddall \glsaddall[<options>]
```

The optional argument is the same as for `\glsadd`, except there is also a key `types` which can be used to specify which glossaries to use. This should be a comma separated list. For example, if you only want to add all the entries belonging to the list of acronyms (specified by the glossary type `\acronymtype`) and a list of notation (specified by the glossary type `notation`) then you can do:

```
\glsaddall[types={\acronymtype,notation}]
```

Note that `\glsadd` and `\glsaddall` add the current location to the **number list**. In the case of `\glsaddall`, all entries in the glossary will have the same location in the number list. If you want to use `\glsaddall`, it's best to suppress the number list with the `nonumberlist` package option. (See sections 2.3 and 5.)

There is now a variation of `\glsaddall` that skips any entries that have already been used:

7 Adding an Entry to the Glossary Without Generating Text

`\glsaddallunused`

`\glsaddallunused[<list>]`

This command uses `\glsadd[format=@gobble]` which will ignore this location in the number list. The optional argument *<list>* is a comma-separated list of glossary types. If omitted, it defaults to the list of all defined glossaries.

Example 11 (Dual Entries)

The example file `sample-dual.tex` makes use of `\glsadd` to allow for an entry that should appear both in the main glossary and in the list of acronyms. This example sets up the list of acronyms using the acronym package option:

```
\usepackage[acronym]{glossaries}
```

A new command is then defined to make it easier to define dual entries:

```
\newcommand*{\newdualentry}[5][ ]{%
  \newglossaryentry{main-#2}{name={#4},%
    text={#3\glsadd{#2}},%
    description={#5},%
    #1
  }%
  \newacronym{#2}{#3\glsadd{main-#2}}{#4}%
}
```

This has the following syntax:

```
\newdualentry[<options>]{<label>}{<abbrv>}{<long>}{<description>}
```

You can then define a new dual entry:

```
\newdualentry{svm}% label
  {SVM}% abbreviation
  {support vector machine}% long form
  {Statistical pattern recognition technique}% description
```

Now you can reference the acronym with `\gls{svm}` or you can reference the entry in the main glossary with `\gls{main-svm}`.

8 Cross-Referencing Entries

You must use `\makeglossaries` (Options 2 or 3) or `\makenoidxglossaries` (Option 1) *before* defining any terms that cross-reference entries. If any of the terms that you have cross-referenced don't appear in the glossary, check that you have put `\makeglossaries/\makenoidxglossaries` before all entry definitions.

There are several ways of cross-referencing entries in the glossary:

1. You can use commands such as `\gls` in the entries description. For example:

```
\newglossaryentry{apple}{name=apple,
description={firm, round fruit. See also \gls{pear}}}
```

Note that with this method, if you don't use the cross-referenced term in the main part of the document, you will need two runs of `makeglossaries`:

```
latex filename
makeglossaries filename
latex filename
makeglossaries filename
latex filename
```

2. As described in Section 4, you can use the `see` key when you define the entry. For example:

```
\newglossaryentry{MaclaurinSeries}{name={Maclaurin
series},
description={Series expansion},
see={TaylorsTheorem}}
```

Note that in this case, the entry with the `see` key will automatically be added to the glossary, but the cross-referenced entry won't. You therefore need to ensure that you use the cross-referenced term with the commands described in Section 6 or Section 7.

8 Cross-Referencing Entries

The “see” tag is produce using `\seename`, but can be overridden in specific instances using square brackets at the start of the `see` value. For example:

```
\newglossaryentry{MaclaurinSeries}{name={Maclaurin
series},
description={Series expansion},
see=[see also]{TaylorsTheorem}}
```

Take care if you want to use the optional argument of commands such as `\newacronym` or `\newterm` as the value will need to be grouped. For example:

```
\newterm{seal}
\newterm[see={ [see also] seal}]{sea lion}
```

Similarly if the value contains a list. For example:

```
\glossaryentry{lemon}{
  name={lemon},
  description={Yellow citrus fruit}
}
\glossaryentry{lime}
{
  name={lime},
  description={Green citrus fruit}
}
\glossaryentry{citrus}
{
  name={citrus},
  description={Plant in the Rutaceae family},
  see={lemon, lime}
}
```

3. After you have defined the entry, use

`\glssee`

`\glssee[<tag>]{<label>}{<xr label list>}`

where *<xr label list>* is a comma-separated list of entry labels to be cross-referenced, *<label>* is the label of the entry doing the cross-referencing and *<tag>* is the “see” tag. (The default value of *<tag>* is `\seename`.) For example:

```
\glssee[see also]{series}{FourierSeries,TaylorsTheorem}
```

8 Cross-Referencing Entries

Note that this automatically adds the entry given by $\langle label \rangle$ to the glossary but doesn't add the cross-referenced entries (specified by $\langle xr label list \rangle$) to the glossary.

In both cases 2 and 3 above, the cross-referenced information appears in the **number list**, whereas in case 1, the cross-referenced information appears in the description. (See the `sample-crossref.tex` example file that comes with this package.) This means that in cases 2 and 3, the cross-referencing information won't appear if you have suppressed the number list. In this case, you will need to activate the number list for the given entries using `nonumberlist=false`. Alternatively, if you just use the `see` key instead of `\glssee`, you can automatically activate the number list using the `seeautonumberlist` package option.

8.1 Customising Cross-reference Text

When you use either the `see` key or the command `\glssee`, the cross-referencing information will be typeset in the glossary according to:

`\glsseeformat`

```
\glsseeformat [  $\langle tag \rangle$  ] {  $\langle label-list \rangle$  } {  $\langle location \rangle$  }
```

The default definition of `\glsseeformat` is:

```
\emph{  $\langle tag \rangle$  } \glsseelist {  $\langle label-list \rangle$  }
```

Note that the location is always ignored.¹ For example, if you want the tag to appear in bold, you can do:²

```
\renewcommand*{\glsseeformat}[3][\seename]{\textbf{#1}
\glsseelist{#2}}
```

The list of labels is dealt with by `\glsseelist`, which iterates through the list and typesets each entry in the label. The entries are separated by

`\glsseesep`

```
\glsseesep
```

or (for the last pair)

¹`makeindex` will always assign a location number, even if it's not needed, so it needs to be discarded.

²If you redefine `\glsseeformat`, keep the default value of the optional argument as `\seename` as both `see` and `\glssee` explicitly write `[\seename]` in the output file if no optional argument is given.

8 Cross-Referencing Entries

`\glsseelastsep`

`\glsseelastsep`

These default to “`, \space`” and “`\space\andname\space`” respectively. The list entry text is displayed using:

`\glsseeitemformat`

`\glsseeitemformat{\langle label \rangle}`

This defaults to `\glsentrytext{\langle label \rangle}`.³ For example, to make the cross-referenced list use small caps:

```
\renewcommand{\glsseeitemformat}[1]{%
  \textsc{\glsentrytext{#1}}}
```

You can use `\glsseeformat` and `\glsseelist` in the main body of the text, but they won't automatically add the cross-referenced entries to the glossary. If you want them added with that location, you can do:

```
Some information (see also
\glsseelist{FourierSeries,TaylorsTheorem}%
\glsadd{FourierSeries}\glsadd{TaylorsTheorem}) .
```

³In versions before 3.0, `\glsentryname` was used, but this could cause problems when the name key was **sanitized**.

9 Using Glossary Terms Without Links

The commands described in this section display entry details without adding any information to the glossary. They don't use `\glstextformat`, they don't have any optional arguments, they don't affect the **first use flag** and, apart from `\glshyperlink`, they don't produce hyperlinks.

Commands that aren't expandable will be ignored by PDF bookmarks, so you will need to provide an alternative via `hyperref's \texorpdfstring` if you want to use them in sectioning commands. (This isn't specific to the glossaries package.) See the `hyperref` documentation for further details. All the commands that convert the first letter to upper case aren't expandable. The other commands depend on whether their corresponding keys were assigned non-expandable values.

`\glsentryname`

`\glsentryname{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryname`

`\Glsentryname{⟨label⟩}`

These commands display the name of the glossary entry given by `⟨label⟩`, as specified by the name key. `\Glsentryname` makes the first letter upper case. Neither of these commands check for the existence of `⟨label⟩`. The first form `\glsentryname` is expandable (unless the name contains unexpandable commands).

`\glossentryname`

`\glossentryname{⟨label⟩}`

This is like `\glsnamefont{\glsentryname{⟨label⟩}}` but also checks for the existence of `⟨label⟩`. This command is not expandable. It's used in the predefined glossary styles, so if you want to change the way the name is formatted in the glossary, you can redefine `\glsnamefont` to use the required fonts. For example:

9 Using Glossary Terms Without Links

```
\renewcommand*{\glsnamefont}[1]{\textmd{\sffamily #1}}
```

`\Glossentryname` `\Glossentryname{⟨label⟩}`

This is like `\glossentryname` but makes the first letter of the name upper case.

`\glsentrytext` `\glsentrytext{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentrytext` `\Glsentrytext{⟨label⟩}`

These commands display the subsequent use text for the glossary entry given by `⟨label⟩`, as specified by the `text` key. `\Glsentrytext` makes the first letter upper case. The first form is expandable (unless the text contains unexpandable commands). The second form is not expandable. Neither checks for the existence of `⟨label⟩`.

`\glsentryplural` `\glsentryplural{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryplural` `\Glsentryplural{⟨label⟩}`

These commands display the subsequent use plural text for the glossary entry given by `⟨label⟩`, as specified by the `plural` key. `\Glsentryplural` makes the first letter upper case. The first form is expandable (unless the value of that key contains unexpandable commands). The second form is not expandable. Neither checks for the existence of `⟨label⟩`.

`\glsentryfirst` `\glsentryfirst{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryfirst` `\Glsentryfirst{⟨label⟩}`

These commands display the **first use text** for the glossary entry given by `⟨label⟩`, as specified by the `first` key. `\Glsentryfirst` makes the first letter upper case. The first form is expandable (unless the value of that key contains unexpandable commands). The second form is not expandable. Neither checks for the existence of `⟨label⟩`.

`\glsentryfirstplural` `\glsentryfirstplural{⟨label⟩}`

9 Using Glossary Terms Without Links

`\Glsentryfirstplural`

```
\Glsentryfirstplural{⟨label⟩}
```

These commands display the plural form of the **first use text** for the glossary entry given by $\langle label \rangle$, as specified by the `firstplural` key. `\Glsentryfirstplural` makes the first letter upper case. The first form is expandable (unless the value of that key contains unexpandable commands). The second form is not expandable. Neither checks for the existence of $\langle label \rangle$.

`\glsentrydesc`

```
\glsentrydesc{⟨label⟩}
```

`\Glsentrydesc`

```
\Glsentrydesc{⟨label⟩}
```

These commands display the description for the glossary entry given by $\langle label \rangle$. `\Glsentrydesc` makes the first letter upper case. The first form is expandable (unless the value of that key contains unexpandable commands). The second form is not expandable. Neither checks for the existence of $\langle label \rangle$.

`\glossentrydesc`

```
\glossentrydesc{⟨label⟩}
```

This is like `\glsentrydesc{⟨label⟩}` but also checks for the existence of $\langle label \rangle$. This command is not expandable. It's used in the predefined glossary styles to display the description.

`\Glossentrydesc`

```
\Glossentrydesc{⟨label⟩}
```

This is like `\glossentrydesc` but converts the first letter to upper case. This command is not expandable.

`\glsentrydescplural`

```
\glsentrydescplural{⟨label⟩}
```

`\Glsentrydescplural`

```
\Glsentrydescplural{⟨label⟩}
```

These commands display the plural description for the glossary entry given by $\langle label \rangle$. `\Glsentrydescplural` makes the first letter upper case. The first form is expandable (unless the value of that key contains unexpandable commands). The second form is not expandable. Neither checks for the existence of $\langle label \rangle$.

9 Using Glossary Terms Without Links

`\glsentrysymbol` `\glsentrysymbol{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentrysymbol` `\Glsentrysymbol{⟨label⟩}`

These commands display the symbol for the glossary entry given by `⟨label⟩`. `\Glsentrysymbol` makes the first letter upper case. The first form is expandable (unless the value of that key contains unexpandable commands). The second form is not expandable. Neither checks for the existence of `⟨label⟩`.

`\glossentrysymbol` `\glossentrysymbol{⟨label⟩}`

This is like `\glsentrysymbol{⟨label⟩}` but also checks for the existence of `⟨label⟩`. This command is not expandable. It's used in the predefined glossary styles to display the symbol.

`\Glossentrysymbol` `\Glossentrysymbol{⟨label⟩}`

This is like `\glossentrysymbol` but converts the first letter to upper case. This command is not expandable.

`\glsentrysymbolplural` `\glsentrysymbolplural{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentrysymbolplural` `\Glsentrysymbolplural{⟨label⟩}`

These commands display the plural symbol for the glossary entry given by `⟨label⟩`. `\Glsentrysymbolplural` makes the first letter upper case. The first form is expandable (unless the value of that key contains unexpandable commands). The second form is not expandable. Neither checks for the existence of `⟨label⟩`.

`\glsentryuseri` `\glsentryuseri{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryuseri` `\Glsentryuseri{⟨label⟩}`

`\glsentryuserii` `\glsentryuserii{⟨label⟩}`

9 Using Glossary Terms Without Links

`\Glsentryuserii`

`\Glsentryuserii{⟨label⟩}`

`\glsentryuseriii`

`\glsentryuseriii{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryuseriii`

`\Glsentryuseriii{⟨label⟩}`

`\glsentryuseriv`

`\glsentryuseriv{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryuseriv`

`\Glsentryuseriv{⟨label⟩}`

`\glsentryuserv`

`\glsentryuserv{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryuserv`

`\Glsentryuserv{⟨label⟩}`

`\glsentryuservi`

`\glsentryuservi{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryuservi`

`\Glsentryuservi{⟨label⟩}`

These commands display the value of the user keys for the glossary entry given by *⟨label⟩*. The lower case forms are expandable (unless the value of the key contains unexpandable commands). The commands beginning with an upper case letter convert the first letter of the required value to upper case and are not expandable. None of these commands check for the existence of *⟨label⟩*.

`\glshyperlink`

`\glshyperlink[⟨link text⟩]{⟨label⟩}`

This command provides a hyperlink to the glossary entry given by *⟨label⟩* **but does not add any information to the glossary file**. The link text is given by `\glsentrytext{⟨label⟩}` by default¹, but can be overridden using the optional argument.

¹versions before 3.0 used `\glsentryname` as the default, but this could cause problems when name had been **sanitized**.

If you use `\glshyperlink`, you need to ensure that the relevant entry has been added to the glossary using any of the commands described in Section 6 or Section 7 otherwise you will end up with an undefined link.

The next two commands are only available with **Option 1** or with the `savenumberlist` package option:

`\glsentrynumberlist`

`\glsentrynumberlist{⟨label⟩}`

`\glsdisplaynumberlist`

`\glsdisplaynumberlist{⟨label⟩}`

Both display the **number list** for the entry given by `⟨label⟩`. When used with **Option 1** a rerun is required to ensure this list is up-to-date, when used with Options **2** or **3** a run of `makeglossaries` (or `makeindex/xindy`) followed by one or two runs of L^AT_EX is required.

The first command, `\glsentrynumberlist`, simply displays the number list as is. The second command, `\glsdisplaynumberlist`, formats the list using:

`\glsnumlistsep`

`\glsnumlistsep`

as the separator between all but the last two elements and

`\glsnumlistlastsep`

`\glsnumlistlastsep`

between the final two elements. The defaults are `,`, `_` and `_ \& _`, respectively.

`\glsdisplaynumberlist` is fairly experimental. It works with **Option 1**, but for Options **2** or **3** it only works when the default counter format is used (that is, when the format key is set to `glsnumberformat`). This command will only work with `hyperref` if you choose **Option 1**. If you try using this command with Options **2** or **3** and `hyperref`, `\glsentrynumberlist` will be used instead.

For further information see section 1.10.2 “Displaying entry details without adding information to the glossary” in the documented code (`glossaries-code.pdf`).

10 Displaying a glossary

`\printnoidxglossaries`

Option 1: `\printnoidxglossaries`

(Must be used with `\makenoidxglossaries` in the preamble.)

`\printglossaries`

Options 2 and 3: `\printglossaries`

(Must be used with `\makeglossaries` in the preamble.)

These commands will display all the glossaries in the order in which they were defined. Note that, in the case of Options 2 and 3, no glossaries will appear until you have either used the Perl script `makeglossaries` or have directly used `makeindex` or `xindy` (as described in Section 1.3). If the glossary still does not appear after you re- \LaTeX your document, check the `makeindex/xindy` log files to see if there is a problem. With Option 1, you just need two \LaTeX runs to make the glossaries appear, but you may need further runs to make the **number lists** up-to-date.

An individual glossary can be displayed using:

`\printnoidxglossary`

Option 1: `\printnoidxglossary[$\langle options \rangle$]`

(Must be used with `\makenoidxglossaries` in the preamble.)

`\printglossary`

Options 2 and 3: `\printglossary[$\langle options \rangle$]`

(Must be used with `\makeglossaries` in the preamble.)

where $\langle options \rangle$ is a $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ list of options. The following keys are available:

10 Displaying a glossary

type The value of this key specifies which glossary to print. If omitted, the default glossary is assumed. For example, to print the list of acronyms:

```
\printglossary[type=\acronymtype]
```

title This is the glossary's title (overriding the title specified when the glossary was defined).

toctitle This is the title to use for the table of contents (if the `toc` package option has been used). It may also be used for the page header, depending on the page style. If omitted, the value of `title` is used.

style This specifies which glossary style to use for this glossary, overriding the effect of the `style` package option or `\glossarystyle`.

numberedsection This specifies whether to use a numbered section for this glossary, overriding the effect of the `numberedsection` package option. This key has the same syntax as the `numberedsection` package option, described in Section 2.2.

nonumberlist This is a boolean key. If true (`nonumberlist=true`) the `numberlist` is suppressed for this glossary. If false (`nonumberlist=false`) the `numberlist` is displayed for this glossary. If no value is supplied, true is assumed.

printnoidxglossarysort This key is only available for [Option 1](#). Possible values are: `word` (word order), `letter` (letter order), `standard` (word or letter ordering taken from the `order` package option), `use` (order of use), `def` (order of definition) `nocase` (case-insensitive) or `case` (case-sensitive).

The word and letter order sort methods use `datatool`'s `\dtlwordindexcompare` and `\dtlletterindexcompare` handlers. The case-insensitive sort method uses `datatool`'s `\dtlicompare` handler. The case-sensitive sort method uses `datatool`'s `\dtlcompare` handler. See the `datatool` documentation for further details.

If you don't get an error with `sort=use` and `sort=def` but you do get an error with one of the other sort options, then you probably need to use the `sanitizesort=true` package option or make sure none of the entries have fragile commands in their `sort` field.

By default, the glossary is started either by `\chapter*` or by `\section*`, depending on whether or not `\chapter` is defined.

10 Displaying a glossary

This can be overridden by the section package option or the `\setglossarysection` command. Numbered sectional units can be obtained using the `numberedsection` package option. Each glossary sets the page header via the command

`\glsglossarymark`

```
\glsglossarymark{<title>}
```

If this mechanism is unsuitable for your chosen class file or page style package, you will need to redefine `\glsglossarymark`. Further information about these options and commands is given in Section 2.2.

Information can be added to the start of the glossary (after the title and before the main body of the glossary) by redefining

`\glossarypreamble`

```
\glossarypreamble
```

For example:

```
\renewcommand{\glossarypreamble}{Numbers in italic  
indicate primary definitions.}
```

This needs to be done before the glossary is displayed.

If you want a different preamble per glossary you can use

`\setglossarypreamble`

```
\setglossarypreamble[<type>]{<preamble text>}
```

If `<type>` is omitted, `\glsdefaulttype` is used.

For example:

```
\setglossarypreamble{Numbers in italic  
indicate primary definitions.}
```

This will print the given preamble text for the main glossary, but not have any preamble text for any other glossaries.

There is an analogous command to `\glossarypreamble` called

`\glossarypostamble`

```
\glossarypostamble
```

which is placed at the end of each glossary.

Example 12 (Switch to Two Column Mode for Glossary)

Suppose you are using the `superheaderborder` style¹, and you want the glossary to be in two columns, but after the glossary you want to switch back to one column mode, you could do:

¹you can't use the `longheaderborder` style for this example as you can't use the `longtable` environment in two column mode.

10 Displaying a glossary

```
\renewcommand*{\glossarysection}[2][ ]{%  
  \twocolumn[{\chapter*{#2}}]%  
  \setlength\glsdescwidth{0.6\linewidth}%  
  \glsglossarymark{\glossarytoctitle}%  
}  
  
\renewcommand*{\glossarypostamble}{\onecolumn}
```

Within each glossary, each entry name is formatted according to

`\glsnamefont`

`\glsnamefont{\langle name \rangle}`

which takes one argument: the entry name. This command is always used regardless of the glossary style. By default, `\glsnamefont` simply displays its argument in whatever the surrounding font happens to be. This means that in the list-like glossary styles (defined in the `glossary-list` style file) the name will appear in bold, since the name is placed in the optional argument of `\item`, whereas in the tabular styles (defined in the `glossary-long` and `glossary-super` style files) the name will appear in the normal font. The hierarchical glossary styles (defined in the `glossary-tree` style file) also set the name in bold.

Example 13 (Changing the Font Used to Display Entry Names in the Glossary)

Suppose you want all the entry names to appear in medium weight small caps in your glossaries, then you can do:

```
\renewcommand{\glsnamefont}[1]{\textsc{\mdseries #1}}
```

11 Xindy (Option 3)

If you want to use `xindy` to sort the glossary, you must use the package option `xindy`:

```
\usepackage[xindy]{glossaries}
```

This ensures that the glossary information is written in `xindy` syntax.

Section 1.3 covers how to use the external `indexing application`. This section covers the commands provided by the `glossaries` package that allow you to adjust the `xindy` style file (`.xdy`) and parameters.

To assist writing information to the `xindy` style file, the `glossaries` package provides the following commands:

`\glsopenbrace`

```
\glsopenbrace
```

`\glsclosebrace`

```
\glsclosebrace
```

which produce an open and closing brace. (This is needed because `\{` and `\}` don't expand to a simple brace character when written to a file.)

In addition, if you are using a package that makes the double quote character active (e.g. `ngerman`) you can use:

`\glsquote`

```
\glsquote{\text{}}
```

which will produce `"\text{"`. Alternatively, you can use `\string` to write the double-quote character. This document assumes that the double quote character has not been made active, so the examples just use `"` for clarity.

If you want greater control over the `xindy` style file than is available through the \LaTeX commands provided by the `glossaries` package, you will need to edit the `xindy` style file. In which case, you must use `\noist` to prevent the style file from being overwritten by the `glossaries` package. For additional information about `xindy`, read the `xindy` documentation. I'm sorry I can't provide any assistance with writing `xindy` style files. If you need help, I recommend you ask on the `xindy` mailing list (<http://xindy.sourceforge.net/mailling-list.html>).

11.1 Language and Encodings

When you use **xindy**, you need to specify the language and encoding used (unless you have written your own custom **xindy** style file that defines the relevant alphabet and sort rules). If you use **makeglossaries**, this information is obtained from the document's auxiliary (`.aux`) file. The **makeglossaries** script attempts to find the root language given your document settings, but in the event that it gets it wrong or if **xindy** doesn't support that language, then you can specify the required language using:

`\GlsSetXdyLanguage`

```
\GlsSetXdyLanguage[⟨glossary type⟩]{⟨language⟩}
```

where `⟨language⟩` is the name of the language. The optional argument can be used if you have multiple glossaries in different languages. If `⟨glossary type⟩` is omitted, it will be applied to all glossaries, otherwise the language setting will only be applied to the glossary given by `⟨glossary type⟩`.

If the `inputenc` package is used, the encoding will be obtained from the value of `\inputencodingname`. Alternatively, you can specify the encoding using:

`\GlsSetXdyCodePage`

```
\GlsSetXdyCodePage{⟨code⟩}
```

where `⟨code⟩` is the name of the encoding. For example:

```
\GlsSetXdyCodePage{utf8}
```

Note that you can also specify the language and encoding using the package option `xindy={language=⟨lang⟩,codepage=⟨code⟩}`. For example:

```
\usepackage[xindy={language=english,codepage=utf8}]{glossaries}
```

If you write your own custom **xindy** style file that includes the language settings, you need to set the language to nothing:

```
\GlsSetXdyLanguage{}
```

(and remember to use `\noist` to prevent the style file from being overwritten).

The commands `\GlsSetXdyLanguage` and `\GlsSetXdyCodePage` have no effect if you don't use **makeglossaries**. If you call **xindy** without **makeglossaries** you need to remember to set the language and encoding using the `-L` and `-C` switches.

11.2 Locations and Number lists

If you use xindy, the glossaries package needs to know which counters you will be using in the **number list** in order to correctly format the **xindy** style file. Counters specified using the counter package option or the `\counter` option of `\newglossary` are automatically taken care of, but if you plan to use a different counter in the counter key for commands like `\glslink`, then you need to identify these counters *before* `\makeglossaries` using:

`\GlsAddXdyCounters`

```
\GlsAddXdyCounters{<counter list>}
```

where `<counter list>` is a comma-separated list of counter names.

The most likely attributes used in the format key (`textrm`, `hyperterm` etc) are automatically added to the **xindy** style file, but if you want to use another attribute, you need to add it using:

`\GlsAddXdyAttribute`

```
\GlsAddXdyAttribute{<name>}
```

where `<name>` is the name of the attribute, as used in the format key.

Example 14 (Custom Font for Displaying a Location)

Suppose I want a bold, italic, hyperlinked location. I first need to define a command that will do this:

```
\newcommand*{\hyperbfit}[1]{\textit{\hyperbf{#1}}}
```

but with **xindy**, I also need to add this as an allowed attribute:

```
\GlsAddXdyAttribute{hyperbfit}
```

Now I can use it in the optional argument of commands like `\gls`:

Here is a `\gls[format=hyperbfit]{sample}` entry.

(where `sample` is the label of the required entry).

Note that `\GlsAddXdyAttribute` has no effect if `\noist` is used or if `\makeglossaries` is omitted. `\GlsAddXdyAttribute` must be used before `\makeglossaries`. Additionally, `\GlsAddXdyCounters` must come before `\GlsAddXdyAttribute`.

11 Xindy (Option 3)

If the location numbers don't get expanded to a simple Arabic or Roman number or a letter from a, ..., z or A, ..., Z, then you need to add a location style in the appropriate format using

`\GlsAddXdyLocation` `\GlsAddXdyLocation[\langle prefix-location \rangle]{ \langle name \rangle }{ \langle definition \rangle }`

where \langle name \rangle is the name of the format and \langle definition \rangle is the xindy definition. The optional argument \langle prefix-location \rangle is needed if \backslash theH \langle counter \rangle either isn't defined or is different from \backslash the \langle counter \rangle .

Note that `\GlsAddXdyLocation` has no effect if `\noist` is used or if `\makeglossaries` is omitted. `\GlsAddXdyLocation` must be used before `\makeglossaries`.

Example 15 (Custom Numbering System for Locations)

Suppose I decide to use a somewhat eccentric numbering system for sections where I redefine \backslash thesection as follows:

```
\renewcommand*{\thesection}{[\thechapter]\arabic{section}}
```

If I haven't done `counter=section` in the package option, I need to specify that the counter will be used as a location number:

```
\GlsAddXdyCounters{section}
```

Next I need to add the location style (\backslash thechapter is assumed to be the standard \backslash arabic{chapter}):

```
\GlsAddXdyLocation{section}{:sep "[" "arabic-numbers" :sep "]"
"arabic-numbers"
}
```

Note that if I have further decided to use the `hyperref` package and want to redefine \backslash theHsection as:

```
\renewcommand*{\theHsection}{\thepart.\thesection}
\renewcommand*{\thepart}{\Roman{part}}
```

then I need to modify the `\GlsAddXdyLocation` code above to:

```
\GlsAddXdyLocation["roman-numbers-uppercase"]{section}{:sep "["
"arabic-numbers" :sep "]" "arabic-numbers"
}
```

Since \backslash Roman will result in an empty string if the counter is zero, it's a good idea to add an extra location to catch this:

```
\GlsAddXdyLocation{zero.section}{:sep "["
"arabic-numbers" :sep "]" "arabic-numbers"
}
```

This example is illustrated in the sample file `samplexdy2.tex`.

Example 16 (Locations as Words not Digits)

Suppose I want the page numbers written as words rather than digits and I use the `fntcount` package to do this. I can redefine `\thepage` as follows:

```
\renewcommand*\thepage{\Numberstring{page}}
```

This gets expanded to `\protect \Numberstringnum {<n>}` where `<n>` is the Arabic page number. This means that I need to define a new location that has that form:

```
\GlsAddXdyLocation{Numberstring}{:sep "\string\protect\space
\string\Numberstringnum\space\glsoopenbrace"
"arabic-numbers" :sep "\glsclosebrace"}
```

Note that it's necessary to use `\space` to indicate that spaces also appear in the format, since, unlike \TeX , `xindy` doesn't ignore spaces after control sequences.

Note that `\GlsAddXdyLocation{<name>}{<definition>}` will define commands in the form:

```
\glsX<counter>X<name>{<Hprefix>}{<location>}
```

for each counter that has been identified either by the counter package option, the `<counter>` option for `\newglossary` or in the argument of `\GlsAddXdyCounters`.

The first argument `<Hprefix>` is only relevant when used with the `hyperref` package and indicates that `\the<Hcounter>` is given by `\Hprefix.\the<counter>`. The sample file `samplexdy.tex`, which comes with the `glossaries` package, uses the default page counter for locations, and it uses the default `\glsnumberformat` and a custom `\hyperbfit` format. A new `xindy` location called `Numberstring`, as illustrated above, is defined to make the page numbers appear as "One", "Two", etc. In order for the location numbers to hyperlink to the relevant pages, I need to redefine the necessary `\glsX<counter>X<format>` commands:

```
\renewcommand{\glsXpageXglsnumberformat}[2]{%
\linkpagenumber#2%
}
```

```
\renewcommand{\glsXpageXhyperbfit}[2]{%
```

11 Xindy (Option 3)

```
\textbf{\em\linkpagenumber#2}%  
}  
  
\newcommand{\linkpagenumber}[3]{\hyperlink{page.#3}{#1#2{#3}}}
```

In the **number list**, the locations are sorted according to type. The default ordering is: roman-page-numbers (e.g. i), arabic-page-numbers (e.g. 1), arabic-section-numbers (e.g. 1.1 if the compositor is a full stop or 1-1 if the compositor is a hyphen¹), alpha-page-numbers (e.g. a), Roman-page-numbers (e.g. I), Alpha-page-numbers (e.g. A), Appendix-page-numbers (e.g. A.1 if the Alpha compositor is a full stop or A-1 if the Alpha compositor is a hyphen²), user defined location names (as specified by `\GlsAddXdyLocation` in the order in which they were defined), see (cross-referenced entries). This ordering can be changed using:

```
\GlsSetXdyLocationClassOrder
```

```
\GlsSetXdyLocationClassOrder{<location names>}
```

where each location name is delimited by double quote marks and separated by white space. For example:

```
\GlsSetXdyLocationClassOrder{  
  "arabic-page-numbers"  
  "arabic-section-numbers"  
  "roman-page-numbers"  
  "Roman-page-numbers"  
  "alpha-page-numbers"  
  "Alpha-page-numbers"  
  "Appendix-page-numbers"  
  "see"  
}
```

Note that `\GlsSetXdyLocationClassOrder` has no effect if `\noist` is used or if `\makeglossaries` is omitted. `\GlsSetXdyLocationClassOrder` must be used before `\makeglossaries`.

If a **number list** consists of a sequence of consecutive numbers, the range will be concatenated. The number of consecutive locations that causes a range formation defaults to 2, but can be changed using:

¹see `\setCompositor` described in Section 3

²see `\setAlphaCompositor` described in Section 3

11 Xindy (Option 3)

`\GlsSetXdyMinRangeLength`

```
\GlsSetXdyMinRangeLength{⟨n⟩}
```

For example:

```
\GlsSetXdyMinRangeLength{3}
```

The argument may also be the keyword `none`, to indicate that there should be no range formations. See the `xindy` manual for further details on range formations.

Note that `\GlsSetXdyMinRangeLength` has no effect if `\noist` is used or if `\makeglossaries` is omitted. `\GlsSetXdyMinRangeLength` must be used before `\makeglossaries`.

See Section 5 for further details.

11.3 Glossary Groups

The glossary is divided into groups according to the first letter of the sort key. The glossaries package also adds a number group by default, unless you suppress it in the xindy package option. For example:

```
\usepackage[xindy={glsnumbers=false}]{glossaries}
```

Any entry that doesn't go in one of the letter groups or the number group is placed in the default group.

If you have a number group, the default behaviour is to locate it before the "A" letter group. If you are not using a Roman alphabet, you can change this using:

`\GlsSetXdyFirstLetterAfterDigits`

```
\GlsSetXdyFirstLetterAfterDigits{⟨letter⟩}
```

Note that `\GlsSetXdyFirstLetterAfterDigits` has no effect if `\noist` is used or if `\makeglossaries` is omitted. `\GlsSetXdyFirstLetterAfterDigits` must be used before `\makeglossaries`.

12 Defining New Glossaries

A new glossary can be defined using:

`\newglossary`

```
\newglossary[⟨log-ext⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨in-ext⟩}{⟨out-ext⟩}{⟨title⟩}  
[⟨counter⟩]
```

where $\langle name \rangle$ is the label to assign to this glossary. The arguments $\langle in-ext \rangle$ and $\langle out-ext \rangle$ specify the extensions to give to the input and output files for that glossary, $\langle title \rangle$ is the default title for this new glossary and the final optional argument $\langle counter \rangle$ specifies which counter to use for the associated **number lists** (see also Section 5). The first optional argument specifies the extension for the **makeindex** (**Option 2**) or **xindy** (**Option 3**) transcript file (this information is only used by **makeglossaries** which picks up the information from the auxiliary file). If you use **Option 1**, the $\langle log-ext \rangle$, $\langle in-ext \rangle$ and $\langle out-ext \rangle$ arguments are ignored.

The glossary label $\langle name \rangle$ must not contain any active characters. It's generally best to stick with just characters that have category code 11 (typically the non-extended **Latin characters**).

You can also use:

`\altnewglossary`

```
\altnewglossary{⟨name⟩}{⟨tag⟩}{⟨title⟩}[⟨counter⟩]
```

This is equivalent to

```
\newglossary[⟨tag⟩-gls]{⟨name⟩}{⟨tag⟩-gls}{⟨tag⟩-gls}{⟨title⟩}[⟨counter⟩]
```

Note that the main (default) glossary is automatically created as:

```
\newglossary{main}{gls}{gls}{\glossaryname}
```

so it can be identified by the label `main` (unless the `nomain` package option is used). Using the `acronym` package option is equivalent to:

```
\newglossary[alg]{acronym}{acr}{acn}{\acronymname}
```

so it can be identified by the label `acronym`. If you are not sure whether the `acronym` option has been used, you can identify the list of

12 Defining New Glossaries

`\acronymtype` acronyms by the command `\acronymtype` which is set to `acronym`, if the `acronym` option has been used, otherwise it is set to `main`. Note that if you are using the main glossary as your list of acronyms, you need to declare it as a list of acronyms using the package option `acronymlists`.

The `symbols` package option creates a new glossary with the label `symbols` using:

```
\newglossary[slg]{symbols}{sls}{slo}{\glssymbolsgroupname}
```

The `numbers` package option creates a new glossary with the label `numbers` using:

```
\newglossary[nlg]{numbers}{nls}{nlo}{\glsnumbersgroupname}
```

The `index` package option creates a new glossary with the label `index` using:

```
\newglossary[ilg]{index}{ind}{idx}{\indexname}
```

Options 2 and 3: all glossaries must be defined before `\makeglossaries` to ensure that the relevant output files are opened.

See Section 1.2.1 if you want to redefine `\glossaryname`, especially if you are using `babel` or `translator`. (Similarly for `\glssymbolsgroupname` and `\glsnumbersgroupname`.) If you want to redefine `\indexname`, just follow the advice in [How to change LaTeX's "fixed names"](#).

13 Acronyms

You may have noticed in Section 4 that when you specify a new entry, you can specify alternate text to use when the term is **first used** in the document. This provides a useful means to define acronyms. For convenience, the glossaries package defines the command:

```
\newacronym[<key-val list>]{<label>}{<abbrv>}{<long>}
```

This uses `\newglossaryentry` to create an entry with the given label in the glossary given by `\acronymtype`. You can specify a different glossary using the `type` key within the optional argument. The `\newacronym` command also uses the `long`, `longplural`, `short` and `shortplural` keys in `\newglossaryentry` to store the long and abbreviated forms and their plurals.

If you haven't identified the specified glossary type as a list of acronyms (via the package option `acronymlists` or the command `\DeclareAcronymList`, see Section 2.5) `\newacronym` will add it to the list and *reset the display style* for that glossary via `\defglsentryfmt`. If you have a mixture of acronyms and regular entries within the same glossary, care is needed if you want to change the display style: you must first identify that glossary as a list of acronyms and then use `\defglsentryfmt` (not redefine `\glsentryfmt`) before defining your entries.

The optional argument `{<key-val list>}` allows you to specify keys such as `description` (when used with one of the styles that require a description, described in Section 13.1) or you can override plural forms of `<abbrv>` or `<long>` using the `shortplural` or `longplural` keys. For example:

```
\newacronym[longplural={diagonal matrices}]{%  
  {dm}{DM}{diagonal matrix}}
```

If the **first use** uses the plural form, `\glspl{dm}` will display: diagonal matrices (DMs). If you want to use the `longplural` or `shortplural` keys, I recommend you use `\setacronymstyle` to set the display style rather than using one of the pre-version 4.02 acronym styles.

13 Acronyms

Since `\newacronym` uses `\newglossaryentry`, you can use commands like `\gls` and `\glsreset` as with any other glossary entry.

Since `\newacronym` sets `type=\acronymtype`, if you want to load a file containing acronym definitions using `\loadglsentries[⟨type⟩]{⟨filename⟩}`, the optional argument `⟨type⟩` will not have an effect unless you explicitly set the type as `type=\glsdefaulttype` in the optional argument to `\newacronym`. See Section 4.6.

Example 17 (Defining an Acronym)

The following defines the acronym IDN:

```
\newacronym{idn}{IDN}{identification number}
```

`\gls{idn}` will produce “identification number (IDN)” on **first use** and “IDN” on subsequent uses. If you want to use one of the small-caps acronym styles, described in Section 13.1, you need to use lower case characters for the shortened form:

```
\newacronym{idn}{idn}{identification number}
```

Now `\gls{idn}` will produce “identification number (IDN)” on **first use** and “IDN” on subsequent uses.

There are commands similar to `\gls{text}` (described in Section 6) that allow you to access just the short form, just the long form or the full form, without affecting the **first use flag**. (Note that the full form isn’t necessarily the same as the text produced on **first use**.)

Although these commands are similar to commands such as `\gls{text}`, they behave more like `\glsdisp` (except for the first use behaviour) in that the display is governed by `\defentryfmt` with `\glscustomtext` set as appropriate.

`\acrshort`

```
\acrshort[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]
```

This displays the short form (within the argument of `\acronymfont`) for the entry given by `⟨label⟩`. The optional arguments are the same as

13 Acronyms

those for `\glstext`. There is also a starred version to suppress the hyperlink. There are also analogous upper case variants:

`\Acrshort` `\Acrshort [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

`\ACRshort` `\ACRshort [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

There are also plural versions:

`\acrshortpl` `\acrshortpl [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

`\Acrshortpl` `\Acrshortpl [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

`\ACRshortpl` `\ACRshortpl [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

Similarly for the long form:

`\acrlong` `\acrlong [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

This displays the long form for the entry given by `⟨label⟩`. The optional arguments are the same as before. There is also a starred version to suppress the hyperlink. There are also analogous upper case variants:

`\Acrlong` `\Acrlong [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

`\ACRlong` `\ACRlong [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

Again there are also plural versions:

`\acrlongpl` `\acrlongpl [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

`\Acrlongpl` `\Acrlongpl [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

`\ACRlongpl` `\ACRlongpl [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]`

13 Acronyms

And for the full form:

```
\acrfull [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]
```

This defaults to `⟨long⟩` (`\acronymfont{⟨short⟩}`). The format (including hyperlinks) can be modified by redefining:

```
\acrfullfmt {⟨options⟩} {⟨label⟩} {⟨insert⟩}
```

There are also analogous upper case variants:

```
\Acrfull [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]
```

```
\ACRfull [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]
```

The formats (including hyperlinks) can be modified by redefining:

```
\Acrfullfmt {⟨options⟩} {⟨label⟩} {⟨insert⟩}
```

```
\ACRfullfmt {⟨options⟩} {⟨label⟩} {⟨insert⟩}
```

As before there are also plural versions:

```
\acrfullpl [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]
```

```
\Acrfullpl [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]
```

```
\ACRfullpl [⟨options⟩] {⟨label⟩} [⟨insert⟩]
```

The formats (including hyperlinks) can be modified by redefining:

```
\acrfullplfmt {⟨options⟩} {⟨label⟩} {⟨insert⟩}
```

```
\Acrfullplfmt {⟨options⟩} {⟨label⟩} {⟨insert⟩}
```

```
\ACRfullplfmt {⟨options⟩} {⟨label⟩} {⟨insert⟩}
```

13 Acronyms

If you find the above commands too cumbersome to write, you can use the `shortcuts` package option to activate the shorter command names listed in [table 13.1](#).

Table 13.1: Synonyms provided by the package option `shortcuts`

Shortcut Command	Equivalent Command
<code>\acs</code>	<code>\acrshort</code>
<code>\Acs</code>	<code>\Acrshort</code>
<code>\acsp</code>	<code>\acrshortpl</code>
<code>\Acsp</code>	<code>\Acrshortpl</code>
<code>\acl</code>	<code>\acrlong</code>
<code>\Acl</code>	<code>\Acrlong</code>
<code>\aclp</code>	<code>\acrlongpl</code>
<code>\Aclp</code>	<code>\Acrlongpl</code>
<code>\acf</code>	<code>\acrfull</code>
<code>\Acf</code>	<code>\Acrfull</code>
<code>\acfp</code>	<code>\acrfullpl</code>
<code>\Acfp</code>	<code>\Acrfullpl</code>
<code>\ac</code>	<code>\gls</code>
<code>\Ac</code>	<code>\Gls</code>
<code>\acp</code>	<code>\glspl</code>
<code>\Acp</code>	<code>\Glspl</code>

It is also possible to access the long and short forms without adding information to the glossary using commands analogous to `\glsentrytext` (described in [Section 9](#)).

The commands that convert the first letter to upper case come with the same caveats as those for analogous commands like `\Glsentrytext` (non-expandable, can't be used in PDF bookmarks, care needs to be taken if the first letter is an accented character etc). See [Section 9](#).

The long form can be accessed using:

`\glsentrylong`

`\glsentrylong{⟨label⟩}`

or, with the first letter converted to upper case:

`\Glsentrylong`

`\Glsentrylong{⟨label⟩}`

Plural forms:

13 Acronyms

`\glsentrylongpl` `\glsentrylongpl{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentrylongpl` `\Glsentrylongpl{⟨label⟩}`

Similarly, to access the short form:

`\glsentryshort` `\glsentryshort{⟨label⟩}`

or, with the first letter converted to upper case:

`\Glsentryshort` `\Glsentryshort{⟨label⟩}`

Plural forms:

`\glsentryshortpl` `\glsentryshortpl{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryshortpl` `\Glsentryshortpl{⟨label⟩}`

And the full form, `⟨long⟩` (`⟨short⟩`), can be obtained using:

`\glsentryfull` `\glsentryfull{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryfull` `\Glsentryfull{⟨label⟩}`

`\glsentryfullpl` `\glsentryfullpl{⟨label⟩}`

`\Glsentryfullpl` `\Glsentryfullpl{⟨label⟩}`

(These may be redefined by the acronym style.)

13.1 Changing the Acronym Style

It may be that the default style doesn't suit your requirements in which case you can switch to another styles via

`\setacronymstyle` `\setacronymstyle{⟨style name⟩}`

13 Acronyms

where *⟨style name⟩* is the name of the required style.

You must use `\setacronymstyle` *before* you define the acronyms with `\newacronym`. If you have multiple glossaries representing lists of acronyms, you must use `\setacronymstyle` *after* using `\DeclareAcronymList`.

Note that unlike the default behaviour of `\newacronym`, the styles used via `\setacronymstyle` don't use the `first` or `text` keys, but instead they use `\defglentryfmt` to set a custom format that uses the long and short keys (or their plural equivalents). This means that these styles cope better with plurals that aren't formed by simply appending the singular form with the letter "s". In fact, most of the predefined styles use `\glsgenacfmt` and modify the definitions of commands like `\genacrfullformat`.

Note that when you use `\setacronymstyle` the `name` key is set to

`\acronymentry` `\acronymentry{⟨label⟩}`

and the sort key is set to

`\acronymsort` `\acronymsort{⟨short⟩}{⟨long⟩}`

These commands are redefined by the acronym styles. However, you can redefine them again after the style has been set but before you use `\newacronym`. Protected expansion is performed on `\acronymsort` when the entry is defined.

13.1.1 Predefined Acronym Styles

The glossaries package provides a number of predefined styles. These styles apply

`\firstacronymfont` `\firstacronymfont{⟨text⟩}`

to the short form on first use and

`\acronymfont` `\acronymfont{⟨text⟩}`

on subsequent use. The styles modify the definition of `\acronymfont` as required, but `\firstacronymfont` is only set once by the package when it's loaded. By default `\firstacronymfont{⟨text⟩}` is

13 Acronyms

the same as `\acronymfont{⟨text⟩}`. If you want the short form displayed differently on first use, you can redefine `\firstacronymfont` independently of the acronym style.

The predefined styles that contain `sc` in their name (for example `long-sc-short`) redefine `\acronymfont` to use `\textsc` (so the short form needs to be specified in lower case).

Some fonts don't support bold smallcaps, so you may need to redefine `\glsnamefont` (see Section 10) to switch to medium weight if you are using a glossary style that displays entry names in bold and you have chosen an acronym style that uses `\textsc`.

The predefined styles that contain `sm` in their name (for example `long-sm-short`) redefine `\acronymfont` to use `\textsmaller`.

Note that the `glossaries` package doesn't define or load any package that defines `\textsmaller`. If you use one of the acronym styles that set `\acronymfont` to `\textsmaller` you must explicitly load the `relsize` package or otherwise define `\textsmaller`.

The remaining predefined styles redefine `\acronymfont{⟨text⟩}` to simply do its argument `⟨text⟩`.

In most cases, the predefined styles adjust `\acrfull` and `\glsentryfull` (and their plural and upper case variants) to reflect the style. The only exceptions to this are the `dua` and `footnote` styles (and their variants).

The following styles are supplied by the `glossaries` package:

- `long-short`, `long-sc-short`, `long-sm-short`:

With these three styles, acronyms are displayed in the form

`⟨long⟩ (\firstacronymfont{⟨short⟩})`

on first use and

`\acronymfont{⟨short⟩}`

on subsequent use. They also set `\acronymfont{⟨short⟩}{⟨long⟩}`

13 Acronyms

to just $\langle short \rangle$. This means that the acronyms are sorted according to their short form. In addition, $\backslash acronymentry\{\langle label \rangle\}$ is set to just the short form (enclosed in $\backslash acronymfont$) and the description key is set to the long form.

- short-long, sc-short-long, sm-short-long:

These three styles are analogous to the above three styles, except the display order is swapped to

$\backslash firstacronymfont\{\langle short \rangle\} \ (\langle long \rangle)$

on first use.

Note, however, that $\backslash acronymsort$ and $\backslash acronymentry$ are the same as for the $\langle long \rangle$ ($\langle short \rangle$) styles above, so the acronyms are still sorted according to the short form.

- long-short-desc, long-sc-short-desc, long-sm-short-desc:

These are like the long-short, long-sc-short and long-sm-short styles described above, except that the description key must be supplied in the optional argument of $\backslash newacronym$. They also redefine $\backslash acronymentry$ to $\{\langle long \rangle\}$ ($\backslash acronymfont\{\langle short \rangle\}$) and redefine $\backslash acronymsort\{\langle short \rangle\}\{\langle long \rangle\}$ to just $\langle long \rangle$. This means that the acronyms are sorted according to the long form, and in the list of acronyms the name field has the long form followed by the short form in parentheses. I recommend you use a glossary style such as `altlist` with these acronym styles to allow for the long name field.

- short-long-desc, sc-short-long-desc, sm-short-long-desc:

These styles are analogous to the above three styles, but the first use display style is:

$\backslash firstacronymfont\{\langle short \rangle\} \ (\langle long \rangle)$

The definitions of $\backslash acronymsort$ and $\backslash acronymentry$ are the same as those for long-short-desc etc.

- dua, dua-desc:

These styles always display (via $\backslash gls$) the long form regardless of whether the entry has been used or not. However, $\backslash acrfull$ and $\backslash glsentryfull$ will display $\langle long \rangle$ ($\backslash acronymfont\{\langle short \rangle\}$). In the case of `dua`, the name and sort keys are set to the short

13 Acronyms

form and the description is set to the long form. In the case of `dua-desc`, the name and sort keys are set to the long form and the description is supplied in the optional argument of `\newacronym`.

- `footnote`, `footnote-sc`, `footnote-sm`:

These three styles set the first use display to:

```
\firstacronymfont{⟨short⟩}\footnote{⟨long⟩}
```

However, `\acrfull` and `\glsentryfull` are set to `\acronymfont{⟨short⟩}` (`⟨long⟩`). (And similarly for plural and upper case forms.) On subsequent use the display is:

```
\acronymfont{⟨short⟩}
```

The sort and name keys are set to the short form, and the description is set to the long form.

In order to avoid nested hyperlinks on **first use** the footnote styles automatically implement `hyperfirst=false`.

- `footnote-desc`, `footnote-sc-desc`, `footnote-sm-desc`:

These three styles are similar to the previous three styles, but the description has to be supplied in the optional argument of `\newacronym`. The name key is set to the long form followed by the short form in parentheses and the sort key is set to the long form. This means that the acronyms will be sorted according to the long form. In addition, since the name will typically be quite wide it's best to choose a glossary style that can accommodate this, such as `altlist`.

Example 18 (Adapting a Predefined Acronym Style)

Suppose I want to use the `footnote-sc-desc` style, but I want the name key set to the short form followed by the long form in parentheses and the sort key set to the short form. Then I need to specify the `footnote-sc-desc` style:

```
\setacronymstyle{footnote-sc-desc}
```

13 Acronyms

and then redefine `\acronymsort` and `\acronymentry`:

```
\renewcommand*{\acronymsort}[2]{#1}% sort by short form
\renewcommand*{\acronymentry}[1]{%
  \acronymfont{\glentryshort{#1}}\space (\glentrylong{#1})}%
```

(I’ve used `\space` for extra clarity, but you can just use an actual space instead.)

Since the default Computer Modern fonts don’t support bold smallcaps, I’m also going to redefine `\acronymfont` so that it always switches to medium weight to ensure the smallcaps setting is used:

```
\renewcommand*{\acronymfont}[1]{\textmd{\scshape #1}}
```

This isn’t necessary if you use a font that supports bold smallcaps.

The sample file `sampleFnAcrDesc.tex` illustrates this example.

13.1.2 Defining A Custom Acronym Style

You may find that the predefined acronyms styles that come with the glossaries package don’t suit your requirements. In this case you can define your own style using:

`\newacronymstyle`

```
\newacronymstyle{<style name>}{<display>}{<definitions>}
```

where *<style name>* is the name of the new style (avoid active characters). The second argument, *<display>*, is equivalent to the mandatory argument of `\defglentryfmt`. You can simply use `\glsgenacfmt` or you can customize the display using commands like `\ifglused`, `\glcifplural` and `\glscapscase`. (See Section 6.1 for further details.) If the style is likely to be used with a mixed glossary (that is entries in that glossary are defined both with `\newacronym` and `\newglossaryentry`) then you can test if the entry is an acronym and use `\glsgenacfmt` if it is or `\glsgenentryfmt` if it isn’t. For example, the long-short style sets *<display>* as

```
\ifglshaslong{\glslabel}{\glsgenacfmt}{\glsgenentryfmt}%
```

(You can use `\ifglshasshort` instead of `\ifglshaslong` to test if the entry is an acronym if you prefer.)

The third argument, *<definitions>*, can be used to redefine the commands that affect the display style, such as `\acronymfont` or, if *<display>* uses `\glsgenacfmt`, `\genacrfullformat` and its variants.

13 Acronyms

Note that `\setacronymstyle` redefines `\glsentryfull` and `\acrfullfmt` to use `\genacrfullformat` (and similarly for the plural and upper case variants). If this isn't appropriate for the style (as in the case of styles like `footnote` and `dua`) `\newacronymstyle` should redefine these commands within *definitions*.

Within `\newacronymstyle`'s *definitions* argument you can also redefine

`\GenericAcronymFields`

```
\GenericAcronymFields
```

This is a list of additional fields to be set in `\newacronym`. You can use the following token registers to access the entry label, long form and short form: `\glslabeltok`, `\glslongtok` and `\glsshorttok`. As with all TeX registers, you can access their values by preceding the register with `\the`. For example, the long-short style does:

`\glslabeltok`
`\glslongtok`
`\glsshorttok`

```
\renewcommand*{\GenericAcronymFields}{%
  description={\the\glslongtok}}%
```

which sets the description field to the long form of the acronym whereas the long-short-desc style does:

```
\renewcommand*{\GenericAcronymFields}{}%
```

since the description needs to be specified by the user.

It may be that you want to define a new acronym style that's based on an existing style. Within *display* you can use

`\GlsUseAcrEntryDispStyle`

```
\GlsUseAcrEntryDispStyle{<style name>}
```

to use the *display* definition from the style given by *style name*. Within *definitions* you can use

`\GlsUseAcrStyleDefs`

```
\GlsUseAcrStyleDefs{<style name>}
```

to use the *definitions* from the style given by *style name*. For example, the long-sc-short acronym style is based on the long-short style with minor modifications (remember to use `##` instead of `#` within *definitions*):

```
\newacronymstyle{long-sc-short}%
{% use the same display as "long-short"
  \GlsUseAcrEntryDispStyle{long-short}%
}%
{% use the same definitions as "long-short"
  \GlsUseAcrStyleDefs{long-short}%
}
```

13 Acronyms

```
% Minor modifications:
\renewcommand{\acronymfont}[1]{\textsc{##1}}%
\renewcommand*{\acrpluralsuffix}{\glstextup{\glspluralsuffix}}%
}
```

`\glstextup` (`\glstextup` is used to cancel the effect of `\textsc`. This defaults to `\textulc`, if defined, otherwise `\textup`. For example, the plural of SVM should be rendered as SVMs rather than SVMS.)

Example 19 (Defining a Custom Acronym Style)

Suppose I want my acronym on **first use** to have the short form in the text and the long form with the description in a footnote. Suppose also that I want the short form to be put in small caps in the main body of the document, but I want it in normal capitals in the list of acronyms. In my list of acronyms, I want the long form as the name with the short form in brackets followed by the description. That is, in the text I want `\gls` on **first use** to display:

```
\textsc{\langle abbrev \rangle} \footnote{\langle long \rangle: \langle description \rangle}
```

on subsequent use:

```
\textsc{\langle abbrev \rangle}
```

and in the list of acronyms, each entry will be displayed in the form:

```
\langle long \rangle (\langle short \rangle) \langle description \rangle
```

Let's suppose it's possible that I may have a mixed glossary. I can check this in the second argument of `\newacronymstyle` using:

```
\ifglshaslong{\glslabel}{\glsacronymfmt}{\glsentryfmt}%
```

This will use `\glsentryfmt` if the entry isn't an acronym, otherwise it will use `\glsacronymfmt`. The third argument (`\definitions`) of `\newacronymstyle` needs to redefine `\genacrfullformat` etc so that the **first use** displays the short form in the text with the long form in a footnote followed by the description. This is done as follows (remember to use `##` instead of `#`):

```
% No case change, singular first use:
\renewcommand*{\genacrfullformat}[2]{%
  \firstacronymfont{\glsentryshort{##1}}##2%
  \footnote{\glsentrylong{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
}%
% First letter upper case, singular first use:
```

13 Acronyms

```
\renewcommand*{\Genacrfullformat}[2]{%
  \firstacronymfont{\Glsentryshort{##1}}##2%
  \footnote{\glsentrylong{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
}%
% No case change, plural first use:
\renewcommand*{\genplacrfullformat}[2]{%
  \firstacronymfont{\glsentryshortpl{##1}}##2%
  \footnote{\glsentrylongpl{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
}%
% First letter upper case, plural first use:
\renewcommand*{\Genplacrfullformat}[2]{%
  \firstacronymfont{\Glsentryshortpl{##1}}##2%
  \footnote{\glsentrylongpl{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
}%
```

If you think it inappropriate for the short form to be capitalised at the start of a sentence you can change the above to:

```
% No case change, singular first use:
\renewcommand*{\genacrfullformat}[2]{%
  \firstacronymfont{\glsentryshort{##1}}##2%
  \footnote{\glsentrylong{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
}%
% No case change, plural first use:
\renewcommand*{\genplacrfullformat}[2]{%
  \firstacronymfont{\glsentryshortpl{##1}}##2%
  \footnote{\glsentrylongpl{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
}%
\let\Genacrfullformat\genacrfullformat
\let\Genplacrfullformat\genplacrfullformat
```

Another variation is to use `\Glsentrylong` and `\Glsentrylongpl` in the footnote instead of `\glsentrylong` and `\glsentrylongpl`.

Now let's suppose that commands such as `\glsentryfull` and `\acrfull` shouldn't use a footnote, but instead use the format: *<long>* (*<short>*). This means that the style needs to redefine `\glsentryfull`, `\acrfullfmt` and their plural and upper case variants.

First, the non-linking commands:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsentryfull}[1]{%
  \glsentrylong{##1}\space
  (\acronymfont{\glsentryshort{##1}})%
}%
\renewcommand*{\Glsentryfull}[1]{%
  \Glsentrylong{##1}\space
  (\acronymfont{\glsentryshort{##1}})%
}%
\renewcommand*{\glsentryfullpl}[1]{%
  \glsentrylongpl{##1}\space
```

13 Acronyms

```
(\acronymfont{\glentryshortpl{##1}})%
}%
\renewcommand*{\Glsentryfullpl}[1]{%
  \Glsentrylongpl{##1}\space
  (\acronymfont{\glentryshortpl{##1}})%
}%
```

Now for the linking commands:

```
\renewcommand*{\acrfullfmt}[3]{%
  \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
    \glentrylong{##2}##3\space
    (\acronymfont{\glentryshort{##2}})%
  }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\Acrfullfmt}[3]{%
  \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
    \Glsentrylong{##2}##3\space
    (\acronymfont{\glentryshort{##2}})%
  }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\ACRfullfmt}[3]{%
  \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
    \MakeTextUppercase{%
      \glentrylong{##2}##3\space
      (\acronymfont{\glentryshort{##2}})%
    }%
  }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\acrfullplfmt}[3]{%
  \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
    \glentrylongpl{##2}##3\space
    (\acronymfont{\glentryshortpl{##2}})%
  }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\Acrfullplfmt}[3]{%
  \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
    \Glsentrylongpl{##2}##3\space
    (\acronymfont{\glentryshortpl{##2}})%
  }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\ACRfullplfmt}[3]{%
  \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
    \MakeTextUppercase{%
      \glentrylongpl{##2}##3\space
      (\acronymfont{\glentryshortpl{##2}})%
    }%
  }%
}%
}%
```

13 Acronyms

(This may cause problems with long hyperlinks, in which case adjust the definitions so that, for example, only the short form is inside the argument of `\glslink`.)

The style also needs to redefine `\acronymsort` so that the acronyms are sorted according to the long form:

```
\renewcommand*{\acronymsort}[2]{##2}%
```

If you prefer them to be sorted according to the short form you can change the above to:

```
\renewcommand*{\acronymsort}[2]{##1}%
```

The acronym font needs to be set to `\textsc` and the plural suffix adjusted so that the “s” suffix in the plural short form doesn’t get converted to smallcaps:

```
\renewcommand*{\acronymfont}[1]{\textsc{##1}}%
\renewcommand*{\acrpluralsuffix}{\glstextup{\glspluralsuffix}}%
```

There are a number of ways of dealing with the format in the list of acronyms. The simplest way is to redefine `\acronymentry` to the long form followed by the upper case short form in parentheses:

```
\renewcommand*{\acronymentry}[1]{%
  \Glsentrylong{##1}\space
  (\MakeTextUppercase{\glshorttok{##1}})}%
```

(I’ve used `\Glsentrylong` instead of `\glshorttok` to capitalise the name in the glossary.)

An alternative approach is to set `\acronymentry` to just the long form and redefine `\GenericAcronymFields` to set the symbol key to the short form and use a glossary style that displays the symbol in parentheses after the name (such as the tree style) like this:

```
\renewcommand*{\acronymentry}[1]{\Glsentrylong{##1}}%
\renewcommand*{\GenericAcronymFields}{%
  symbol={\protect\MakeTextUppercase{\the\glshorttok}}}%%
```

I’m going to use the first approach and set `\GenericAcronymFields` to do nothing:

```
\renewcommand*{\GenericAcronymFields}{}%
```

Finally, this style needs to switch off hyperlinks on first use to avoid nested links:

```
\glshyperfirstfalse
```

13 Acronyms

Putting this all together:

```
\newacronymstyle{custom-fn}% new style name
{%
  \ifglshaslong{\glslabel}{\glsgenacfmt}{\glsgenentryfmt}%
}%
{%
  \renewcommand*{\GenericAcronymFields}{}%
  \glshyperfirstfalse
  \renewcommand*{\genacrfullformat}[2]{%
    \firstacronymfont{\glsentryshort{##1}}##2%
    \footnote{\glsentrylong{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
  }%
  \renewcommand*{\Genacrfullformat}[2]{%
    \firstacronymfont{\Glsentryshort{##1}}##2%
    \footnote{\glsentrylong{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
  }%
  \renewcommand*{\genplacrfullformat}[2]{%
    \firstacronymfont{\glsentryshortpl{##1}}##2%
    \footnote{\glsentrylongpl{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
  }%
  \renewcommand*{\Genplacrfullformat}[2]{%
    \firstacronymfont{\Glsentryshortpl{##1}}##2%
    \footnote{\glsentrylongpl{##1}: \glsentrydesc{##1}}%
  }%
  \renewcommand*{\glsentryfull}[1]{%
    \glsentrylong{##1}\space
    (\acronymfont{\glsentryshort{##1}})%
  }%
  \renewcommand*{\Glsentryfull}[1]{%
    \Glsentrylong{##1}\space
    (\acronymfont{\glsentryshort{##1}})%
  }%
  \renewcommand*{\glsentryfullpl}[1]{%
    \glsentrylongpl{##1}\space
    (\acronymfont{\glsentryshortpl{##1}})%
  }%
  \renewcommand*{\Glsentryfullpl}[1]{%
    \Glsentrylongpl{##1}\space
    (\acronymfont{\glsentryshortpl{##1}})%
  }%
  \renewcommand*{\acrfullfmt}[3]{%
    \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
      \glsentrylong{##2}##3\space
      (\acronymfont{\glsentryshort{##2}})%
    }%
  }%
  \renewcommand*{\Acrfullfmt}[3]{%
    \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
      \Glsentrylong{##2}##3\space
    }%
  }%
```

13 Acronyms

```

        (\acronymfont{\glsentryshort{##2}})%
    }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\ACRfullfmt}[3]{%
    \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
        \MakeTextUppercase{%
            \glsentrylong{##2}##3\space
            (\acronymfont{\glsentryshort{##2}})%
        }%
    }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\acrfullplfmt}[3]{%
    \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
        \glsentrylongpl{##2}##3\space
        (\acronymfont{\glsentryshortpl{##2}})%
    }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\Acrfullplfmt}[3]{%
    \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
        \Glsentrylongpl{##2}##3\space
        (\acronymfont{\glsentryshortpl{##2}})%
    }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\ACRfullplfmt}[3]{%
    \glslink[##1]{##2}{%
        \MakeTextUppercase{%
            \glsentrylongpl{##2}##3\space
            (\acronymfont{\glsentryshortpl{##2}})%
        }%
    }%
}%
\renewcommand*{\acronymfont}[1]{\textsc{##1}}%
\renewcommand*{\acrpluralsuffix}{\glstextup{\glspluralsuffix}}%
\renewcommand*{\acronymsort}[2]{##2}%
\renewcommand*{\acronymentry}[1]{%
    \Glsentrylong{##1}\space
    (\MakeTextUppercase{\glsentryshort{##1}})%
}

```

Now I need to specify that I want to use this new style:

```
\setacronymstyle{custom-fn}
```

I also need to use a glossary style that suits this acronym style, for example `altlist`:

```
\setglossarystyle{altlist}
```

Once the acronym style has been set, I can define my acronyms:

13 Acronyms

```
\newacronym[description={set of tags for use in  
developing hypertext documents}]{html}{html}{Hyper  
Text Markup Language}  
  
\newacronym[description={language used to describe the  
layout of a document written in a markup language}]{css}  
{css}{Cascading Style Sheet}
```

The sample file `sample-custom-acronym.tex` illustrates this example.

13.2 Displaying the List of Acronyms

The list of acronyms is just like any other type of glossary and can be displayed on its own using:

Option 1: `\printnoidxglossary[type=\acronymtype]`

Options 2 and 3: `\printglossary[type=\acronymtype]`

(If you use the `acronym` package option you can also use

`\printacronyms[<options>]`

as a synonym for

`\printglossary[type=\acronymtype, <options>]`

See Section 2.5.)

Alternatively the list of acronyms can be displayed with all the other glossaries using:

Option 1: `\printnoidxglossaries`

Options 2 and 3: `\printglossaries`

However, care must be taken to choose a glossary style that's appropriate to your acronym style. Alternatively, you can define your own custom style (see Section 15.2 for further details).

13.3 Upgrading From the glossary Package

Users of the obsolete glossary package may recall that the syntax used to define new acronyms has changed with the replacement glossaries package. In addition, the old glossary package created the command `\acr-name` when defining the acronym `<acr-name>`.

In order to facilitate migrating from the old package to the new one, the glossaries package¹ provides the command:

`\oldacronym`

```
\oldacronym[<label>]{<abbrv>}{<long>}{<key-val list>}
```

This uses the same syntax as the glossary package’s method of defining acronyms. It is equivalent to:

```
\newacronym[<key-val list>]{<label>}{<abbrv>}{<long>}
```

In addition, `\oldacronym` also defines the commands `\<label>`, which is equivalent to `\gls{<label>}`, and `\<label>*`, which is equivalent to `\Gls{<label>}`. If `<label>` is omitted, `<abbrv>` is used. Since commands names must consist only of alphabetical characters, `<label>` must also only consist of alphabetical characters. Note that `\<label>` doesn’t allow you to use the first optional argument of `\gls` or `\Gls` — you will need to explicitly use `\gls` or `\Gls` to change the settings.

Recall that, in general, L^AT_EX ignores spaces following command names consisting of alphabetical characters. This is also true for `\<label>` unless you additionally load the `xspace` package, but be aware that there are some issues with using `xspace`.²

The glossaries package doesn’t load the `xspace` package since there are both advantages and disadvantages to using `\xspace` in `\<label>`. If you don’t use the `xspace` package you need to explicitly force a space using `_` (backslash space) however you can follow `\<label>` with additional text in square brackets (the final optional argument to `\gls`). If you use the `xspace` package you don’t need to escape the spaces but you can’t use the optional argument to insert text (you will have to explicitly use `\gls`).

To illustrate this, suppose I define the acronym “abc” as follows:

```
\oldacronym{abc}{example acronym}{} 
```

¹as from version 1.18

²See David Carlisle’s explanation in <http://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/86565/drawbacks-of-xspace>

13 Acronyms

This will create the command `\abc` and its starred version `\abc*`. **Table 13.2** illustrates the effect of `\abc` (on subsequent use) according to whether or not the `xspace` package has been loaded. As can be seen from the final row in the table, the `xspace` package prevents the optional argument from being recognised.

Table 13.2: The effect of using `xspace` with `\oldacronym`

Code	With <code>xspace</code>	Without <code>xspace</code>
<code>\abc.</code>	abc.	abc.
<code>\abc xyz</code>	abc xyz	abcxyz
<code>\abc\ xyz</code>	abc xyz	abc xyz
<code>\abc* xyz</code>	Abc xyz	Abc xyz
<code>\abc['s] xyz</code>	abc ['s] xyz	abc's xyz

14 Unsetting and Resetting Entry Flags

When using `\gls`, `\glspl` and their upper case variants it is possible that you may want to use the value given by the first key, even though you have already **used** the glossary entry. Conversely, you may want to use the value given by the text key, even though you haven't used the glossary entry. The former can be achieved by one of the following commands:

`\glsreset`

```
\glsreset{<label>}
```

`\glslocalreset`

```
\glslocalreset{<label>}
```

while the latter can be achieved by one of the following commands:

`\glsunset`

```
\glsunset{<label>}
```

`\glslocalunset`

```
\glslocalunset{<label>}
```

You can also reset or unset all entries for a given glossary or list of glossaries using:

`\glsresetall`

```
\glsresetall[<glossary list>]
```

`\glslocalresetall`

```
\glslocalresetall[<glossary list>]
```

`\glsunsetall`

```
\glsunsetall[<glossary list>]
```

`\glslocalunsetall`

```
\glslocalunsetall[<glossary list>]
```

14 Unsetting and Resetting Entry Flags

where *⟨glossary list⟩* is a comma-separated list of glossary labels. If omitted, all defined glossaries are assumed. For example, to reset all entries in the main glossary and the list of acronyms:

```
\glsresetall[main,acronym]
```

You can determine whether an entry's **first use flag** is set using:

```
\ifglsused
```

```
\ifglsused{⟨label⟩}{⟨true part⟩}{⟨false part⟩}
```

where *⟨label⟩* is the label of the required entry. If the entry has been used, *⟨true part⟩* will be done, otherwise *⟨false part⟩* will be done.

Be careful when using commands such as `\gls` within an environment or command argument that gets processed multiple times as it can cause unwanted side-effects when the first use displayed text is different from subsequent use.

For example, the frame environment in `beamer` processes its argument for each overlay. This means that the **first use flag** will be unset on the first overlay and subsequent overlays will use the non-first use form.

Consider the following example:

```
\documentclass{beamer}

\usepackage{glossaries}

\newacronym{svm}{SVM}{support vector machine}

\begin{document}

\begin{frame}
  \frametitle{Frame 1}

  \begin{itemize}
    \item<+> \gls{svm}
    \item<+> Stuff.
  \end{itemize}
\end{frame}

\end{document}
```

On the first overlay, `\gls{svm}` produces “support vector machine (SVM)” and then unsets the **first use flag**. When the second overlay is processed, `\gls{svm}` now produces “SVM”, which is unlikely to be the desired effect. I don't know anyway around this and

14 Unsetting and Resetting Entry Flags

the only suggestion I can give is to explicitly reset each acronym on first use:

```
\begin{frame}  
  \frametitle{Frame 1}  
  
  \begin{itemize}  
    \item<+> \glsreset{svm}\gls{svm}  
    \item<+> Stuff.  
  \end{itemize}  
\end{frame}
```

This is non-optimal, but the beamer class is too complex for me to suggest an alternative solution.

The `amsmath` environments, such as `align`, also process their contents multiple times, but the `glossaries` package now checks for this.

15 Glossary Styles

Glossaries vary from lists that simply contain a symbol with a terse description to lists of terms or phrases with lengthy descriptions. Some glossaries may have terms with associated symbols. Some may have hierarchical entries. There is therefore no single style that fits every type of glossary. The glossaries package comes with a number of pre-defined glossary styles, described in Section 15.1. You can choose one of these that best suits your type of glossary or, if none of them suit your document, you can define your own style (see Section 15.2).

The glossary style can be set using the style key in the optional argument to `\printnoidxglossary` (Option 1) or `\printglossary` (Options 2 and 3) or using the command:

`\setglossarystyle`

`\setglossarystyle{<style-name>}`

(before the glossary is displayed).

Some of the predefined glossary styles may also be set using the style package option, it depends if the package in which they are defined is automatically loaded by the glossaries package.

15.1 Predefined Styles

The predefined styles can accommodate numbered level 0 (main) and level 1 entries. See the package options `entrycounter`, `counterwithin` and `subentrycounter` described in Section 2.3. There is a summary of available styles in table 15.1.

`\glsdescwidth`
`\glspagelistwidth`

The tabular-like styles that allow multi-line descriptions and page lists use the length `\glsdescwidth` to set the width of the description column and the length `\glspagelistwidth` to set the width of the page list column.¹ These will need to be changed using `\setlength` if the glossary is too wide. Note that the `long4col` and `super4col` styles (and their header and border variations) don't use these lengths as they are designed for single line entries. Instead

¹These lengths will not be available if you use both the `nolong` and `nosuper` package options or if you use the `nostyles` package option unless you explicitly load the relevant package.

Table 15.1: Glossary Styles. An asterisk in the style name indicates anything that matches that doesn't match any previously listed style (e.g. `long3col*` matches `long3col`, `long3colheader`, `long3colborder` and `long3colheaderborder`). A maximum level of 0 indicates a flat glossary (sub-entries are displayed in the same way as main entries). Where the maximum level is given as — there is no limit, but note that `makeindex` (Option 2) imposes a limit of 2 sub-levels. If the homograph column is checked, then the name is not displayed for sub-entries. If the symbol column is checked, then the symbol will be displayed.

Style	Maximum Level	Homograph	Symbol
<code>listdotted</code>	0		
<code>sublistdotted</code>	1		
<code>list*</code>	1	✓	
<code>altlist*</code>	1	✓	
<code>long*3col*</code>	1	✓	
<code>long4col*</code>	1	✓	✓
<code>altlong*4col*</code>	1	✓	✓
<code>long*</code>	1	✓	
<code>super*3col*</code>	1	✓	
<code>super4col*</code>	1	✓	✓
<code>altsuper*4col*</code>	1	✓	✓
<code>super*</code>	1	✓	
<code>*index*</code>	2		✓
<code>treenoname*</code>	—	✓	✓
<code>*tree*</code>	—		✓
<code>*almtree*</code>	—		✓
<code>inline</code>	1	✓	

15 Glossary Styles

you should use the analogous `altlong4col` and `altsuper4col` styles. If you want to explicitly create a line-break within a multi-line description in a tabular-like style it's better to use `\newline` instead of `\\`.

Note that if you use the `style` key in the optional argument to `\printnoidxglossary` (Option 1) or `\printglossary` (Options 2 and 3), it will override any previous style settings for the given glossary, so if, for example, you do

```
\renewcommand*\glsgroupskip{}\n\printglossary[style=long]
```

then the new definition of `\glsgroupskip` will not have an affect for this glossary, as `\glsgroupskip` is redefined by `style=long`. Likewise, `\setglossarystyle` will also override any previous style definitions, so, again

```
\renewcommand*\glsgroupskip{}\n\setglossarystyle{long}
```

will reset `\glsgroupskip` back to its default definition for the named glossary style (`long` in this case). If you want to modify the styles, either use `\newglossarystyle` (described in the next section) or make the modifications after `\setglossarystyle`, e.g.:

```
\setglossarystyle{long}\n\renewcommand*\glsgroupskip{}
```

As from version 3.03, you can now use the package option `nogroupskip` to suppress the gap between groups for the default styles instead of redefining `\glsgroupskip`.

All the styles except for the three- and four-column styles and the `listdotted` style use the command

`\glspostdescription`

`\glspostdescription`

after the description. This simply displays a full stop by default. To eliminate this full stop (or replace it with something else, say, a comma) you will need to redefine `\glspostdescription` before the glossary is displayed. Alternatively, you can suppress it for a given entry by placing `\nopostdesc` in the entry's description.

As from version 3.03 you can now use the package option `nopostdot` to suppress this full stop.

15.1.1 List Styles

The styles described in this section are all defined in the package `glossary-list`. Since they all use the `description` environment, they are

governed by the same parameters as that environment. These styles all ignore the entry's symbol. Note that these styles will automatically be available unless you use the `nolist` or `nostyles` package options.

list The list style uses the description environment. The entry name is placed in the optional argument of the `\item` command (so it will usually appear in bold by default). The description follows, and then the associated **number list** for that entry. The symbol is ignored. If the entry has child entries, the description and number list follows (but not the name) for each child entry. Groups are separated using `\indexspace`.

listgroup The listgroup style is like list but the glossary groups have headings.

listhypergroup The listhypergroup style is like listgroup but has a navigation line at the start of the glossary with links to each group that is present in the glossary. This requires an additional run through L^AT_EX to ensure the group information is up to date. In the navigation line, each group is separated by

`\glshypernavsep`

`\glshypernavsep`

which defaults to a vertical bar with a space on either side. For example, to simply have a space separating each group, do:

```
\renewcommand*{\glshypernavsep}{\space}
```

Note that the hyper-navigation line is now (as from version 1.14) set inside the optional argument to `\item` instead of after it to prevent a spurious space at the start. This can be changed by redefining `\glossaryheader`, but note that this needs to be done *after* the glossary style has been set.

altlist The altlist style is like list but the description starts on the line following the name. (As with the list style, the symbol is ignored.) Each child entry starts a new line, but as with the list style, the name associated with each child entry is ignored.

altlistgroup The altlistgroup style is like altlist but the glossary groups have headings.

altlisthypergroup The altlisthypergroup style is like altlistgroup but has a set of links to the glossary groups. The navigation line is the same as that for listhypergroup, described above.

listdotted This style uses the description environment.² Each entry starts with `\item[]`, followed by the name followed by a dotted line, followed by the description. Note that this style ignores both the **number list** and the symbol. The length

`\glslistdottedwidth`

`\glslistdottedwidth`

governs where the description should start. This is a flat style, so child entries are formatted in the same way as the parent entries.

sublistdotted This is a variation on the listdotted style designed for hierarchical glossaries. The main entries have just the name displayed. The sub entries are displayed in the same manner as listdotted.

15.1.2 Longtable Styles

The styles described in this section are all defined in the package `glossary-long`. Since they all use the `longtable` environment, they are governed by the same parameters as that environment. Note that these styles will automatically be available unless you use the `nolong` or `nostyles` package options. These styles fully justify the description and page list columns. If you want ragged right formatting instead, use the analogous styles described in Section 15.1.3.

long The long style uses the `longtable` environment (defined by the `longtable` package). It has two columns: the first column contains the entry's name and the second column contains the description followed by the **number list**. The entry's symbol is ignored. Sub groups are separated with a blank row. The width of the first column is governed by the widest entry in that column. The width of the second column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth`. Child entries have a similar format to the parent entries except that their name is suppressed.

longborder The longborder style is like long but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

longheader The longheader style is like long but has a header row.

longheaderborder The longheaderborder style is like longheader but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

²This style was supplied by Axel Menzel.

long3col The long3col style is like long but has three columns. The first column contains the entry's name, the second column contains the description and the third column contains the **number list**. The entry's symbol is ignored. The width of the first column is governed by the widest entry in that column, the width of the second column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth`, and the width of the third column is governed by the length `\glspagelistwidth`.

long3colborder The long3colborder style is like the long3col style but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

long3colheader The long3colheader style is like long3col but has a header row.

long3colheaderborder The long3colheaderborder style is like long3colheader but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

long4col The long4col style is like long3col but has an additional column in which the entry's associated symbol appears. This style is used for brief single line descriptions. The column widths are governed by the widest entry in the given column. Use `altlong4col` for multi-line descriptions.

long4colborder The long4colborder style is like the long4col style but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

long4colheader The long4colheader style is like long4col but has a header row.

long4colheaderborder The long4colheaderborder style is like long4colheader but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

altlong4col The altlong4col style is like long4col but allows multi-line descriptions and page lists. The width of the description column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth` and the width of the page list column is governed by the length `\glspagelistwidth`. The widths of the name and symbol columns are governed by the widest entry in the given column.

altlong4colborder The altlong4colborder style is like the long4colborder but allows multi-line descriptions and page lists.

altlong4colheader The altlong4colheader style is like long4colheader but allows multi-line descriptions and page lists.

altlong4colheaderborder The altlong4colheaderborder style is like long4colheaderborder but allows multi-line descriptions and page lists.

15.1.3 Longtable Styles (Ragged Right)

The styles described in this section are all defined in the package `glossary-longragged`. These styles are analogous to those defined in `glossary-long` but the multiline columns are left justified instead of fully justified. Since these styles all use the `longtable` environment, they are governed by the same parameters as that environment. The `glossary-longragged` package additionally requires the `array` package. Note that these styles will only be available if you explicitly load `glossary-longragged`:

```
\usepackage{glossaries}
\usepackage{glossary-longragged}
```

Note that you can't set these styles using the `style package` option since the styles aren't defined until after the `glossaries` package has been loaded.

longragged The `longragged` style has two columns: the first column contains the entry's name and the second column contains the (left-justified) description followed by the **number list**. The entry's symbol is ignored. Sub groups are separated with a blank row. The width of the first column is governed by the widest entry in that column. The width of the second column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth`. Child entries have a similar format to the parent entries except that their name is suppressed.

longraggedborder The `longraggedborder` style is like `longragged` but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

longraggedheader The `longraggedheader` style is like `longragged` but has a header row.

longraggedheaderborder The `longraggedheaderborder` style is like `longraggedheader` but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

longragged3col The `longragged3col` style is like `longragged` but has three columns. The first column contains the entry's name, the second column contains the (left justified) description and the third column contains the (left justified) **number list**. The entry's symbol is ignored. The width of the first column is governed by the widest entry in that column, the width of the second column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth`, and the width of the third column is governed by the length `\glspagelistwidth`.

longragged3colborder The `longragged3colborder` style is like the `longragged3col` style but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

longragged3colheader The `longragged3colheader` style is like `longragged3col` but has a header row.

longragged3colheaderborder The `longragged3colheaderborder` style is like `longragged3colheader` but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

altlongragged4col The `altlongragged4col` style is like `longragged3col` but has an additional column in which the entry's associated symbol appears. The width of the description column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth` and the width of the page list column is governed by the length `\glspagelistwidth`. The widths of the name and symbol columns are governed by the widest entry in the given column.

altlongragged4colborder The `altlongragged4colborder` style is like the `altlongragged4col` but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

altlongragged4colheader The `altlongragged4colheader` style is like `altlongragged4col` but has a header row.

altlongragged4colheaderborder The `altlongragged4colheaderborder` style is like `altlongragged4colheader` but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

15.1.4 Supertabular Styles

The styles described in this section are all defined in the package `glossary-super`. Since they all use the `supertabular` environment, they are governed by the same parameters as that environment. Note that these styles will automatically be available unless you use the `nosuper` or `nostyles` package options. In general, the `longtable` environment is better, but there are some circumstances where it is better to use `supertabular`.³ These styles fully justify the description and page list columns. If you want ragged right formatting instead, use the analogous styles described in Section 15.1.5.

super The `super` style uses the `supertabular` environment (defined by the `supertabular` package). It has two columns: the first column contains the entry's name and the second column contains the

³e.g. with the `flowfram` package.

15 Glossary Styles

description followed by the **number list**. The entry's symbol is ignored. Sub groups are separated with a blank row. The width of the first column is governed by the widest entry in that column. The width of the second column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth`. Child entries have a similar format to the parent entries except that their name is suppressed.

superborder The superborder style is like super but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

superheader The superheader style is like super but has a header row.

superheaderborder The superheaderborder style is like superheader but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

super3col The super3col style is like super but has three columns. The first column contains the entry's name, the second column contains the description and the third column contains the **number list**. The entry's symbol is ignored. The width of the first column is governed by the widest entry in that column. The width of the second column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth`. The width of the third column is governed by the length `\glspagelistwidth`.

super3colborder The super3colborder style is like the super3col style but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

super3colheader The super3colheader style is like super3col but has a header row.

super3colheaderborder The super3colheaderborder style is like the super3colheader style but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

super4col The super4col style is like super3col but has an additional column in which the entry's associated symbol appears. This style is designed for entries with brief single line descriptions. The column widths are governed by the widest entry in the given column. Use `altsuper4col` for multi-line descriptions.

super4colborder The super4colborder style is like the super4col style but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

super4colheader The super4colheader style is like super4col but has a header row.

super4colheaderborder The `super4colheaderborder` style is like the `super4colheader` style but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

altsuper4col The `altsuper4col` style is like `super4col` but allows multi-line descriptions and page lists. The width of the description column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth` and the width of the page list column is governed by the length `\glspagelistwidth`. The width of the name and symbol columns is governed by the widest entry in the given column.

altsuper4colborder The `altsuper4colborder` style is like the `super4colborder` style but allows multi-line descriptions and page lists.

altsuper4colheader The `altsuper4colheader` style is like `super4colheader` but allows multi-line descriptions and page lists.

altsuper4colheaderborder The `altsuper4colheaderborder` style is like `super4colheaderborder` but allows multi-line descriptions and page lists.

15.1.5 Supertabular Styles (Ragged Right)

The styles described in this section are all defined in the package `glossary-superragged`. These styles are analogous to those defined in `glossary-super` but the multiline columns are left justified instead of fully justified. Since these styles all use the `supertabular` environment, they are governed by the same parameters as that environment. The `glossary-superragged` package additionally requires the `array` package. Note that these styles will only be available if you explicitly load `glossary-superragged`:

```
\usepackage{glossaries}
\usepackage{glossary-superragged}
```

Note that you can't set these styles using the style package option since the styles aren't defined until after the `glossaries` package has been loaded.

superragged The `superragged` style uses the `supertabular` environment (defined by the `supertabular` package). It has two columns: the first column contains the entry's name and the second column contains the (left justified) description followed by the **number list**. The entry's symbol is ignored. Sub groups are separated with a blank row. The width of the first column is governed by the widest entry in that column. The width of the second

15 Glossary Styles

column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth`. Child entries have a similar format to the parent entries except that their name is suppressed.

superraggedborder The `superraggedborder` style is like `superragged` but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

superraggedheader The `superraggedheader` style is like `superragged` but has a header row.

superraggedheaderborder The `superraggedheaderborder` style is like `superraggedheader` but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

superragged3col The `superragged3col` style is like `superragged` but has three columns. The first column contains the entry's name, the second column contains the (left justified) description and the third column contains the (left justified) **number list**. The entry's symbol is ignored. The width of the first column is governed by the widest entry in that column. The width of the second column is governed by the length `\glsdescwidth`. The width of the third column is governed by the length `\glspagelistwidth`.

superragged3colborder The `superragged3colborder` style is like the `superragged3col` style but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

superragged3colheader The `superragged3colheader` style is like `superragged3col` but has a header row.

superragged3colheaderborder The `superragged3colheaderborder` style is like `superragged3colheader` but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

altsuperragged4col The `altsuperragged4col` style is like `superragged3col` but has an additional column in which the entry's associated symbol appears. The column widths for the name and symbol column are governed by the widest entry in the given column.

altsuperragged4colborder The `altsuperragged4colborder` style is like the `altsuperragged4col` style but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

altsuperragged4colheader The `altsuperragged4colheader` style is like `altsuperragged4col` but has a header row.

altsuperragged4colheaderborder The `altsuperragged4colheaderborder` style is like `altsuperragged4colheader` but has horizontal and vertical lines around it.

15.1.6 Tree-Like Styles

The styles described in this section are all defined in the package `glossary-tree`. These styles are designed for hierarchical glossaries but can also be used with glossaries that don't have sub-entries. These styles will display the entry's symbol if it exists. Note that these styles will automatically be available unless you use the `notree` or `nostyles` package options.

index The `index` style is similar to the way indices are usually formatted in that it has a hierarchical structure up to three levels (the main level plus two sub-levels). The name is typeset in bold, and if the symbol is present it is set in parentheses after the name and before the description. Sub-entries are indented and also include the name, the symbol in brackets (if present) and the description. Groups are separated using `\indexspace`.

indexgroup The `indexgroup` style is similar to the `index` style except that each group has a heading.

indexhypergroup The `indexhypergroup` style is like `indexgroup` but has a set of links to the glossary groups. The navigation line is the same as that for `listhypergroup`, described above.

tree The `tree` style is similar to the `index` style except that it can have arbitrary levels. (Note that `makeindex` is limited to three levels, so you will need to use `xindy` if you want more than three levels.) Each sub-level is indented by `\glstreeindent`. Note that the name, symbol (if present) and description are placed in the same paragraph block. If you want the name to be apart from the description, use the `alttree` style instead. (See below.)

treegroup The `treegroup` style is similar to the `tree` style except that each group has a heading.

treehypergroup The `treehypergroup` style is like `treegroup` but has a set of links to the glossary groups. The navigation line is the same as that for `listhypergroup`, described above.

treenoname The `treenoname` style is like the `tree` style except that the name for each sub-entry is ignored.

treenonamegroup The `treenonamegroup` style is similar to the `treenoname` style except that each group has a heading.

treenonamehypergroup The `treenonamehypergroup` style is like `treenonamegroup` but has a set of links to the glossary groups. The navigation line is the same as that for `listhypergroup`, described above.

alttree The alttree style is similar to the tree style except that the indentation for each level is determined by the width of the text specified by

`\glsetwidest`

```
\glsetwidest[⟨level⟩]{⟨text⟩}
```

The optional argument $\langle level \rangle$ indicates the level, where 0 indicates the top-most level, 1 indicates the first level sub-entries, etc. If `\glsetwidest` hasn't been used for a given sub-level, the level 0 widest text is used instead. If $\langle level \rangle$ is omitted, 0 is assumed.

For each level, the name is placed to the left of the paragraph block containing the symbol (optional) and the description. If the symbol is present, it is placed in parentheses before the description.

alttreegroup The alttreegroup is like the alttree style except that each group has a heading.

alttreehypergroup The alttreehypergroup style is like alttreegroup but has a set of links to the glossary groups. The navigation line is the same as that for listhypergroup, described above.

15.1.7 Multicols Style

The glossary-mcols package provides tree-like styles that are in the multicols environment (defined by the multicols package). The style names are as their analogous tree styles (as defined in Section 15.1.6) but are prefixed with “mcol”. For example, the mcolindex style is essentially the index style but put in a multicols environment. For the complete list, see table 15.2.

Note that glossary-mcols is not loaded by glossaries. If you want to use any of the multicols styles in that package you need to load it explicitly with `\usepackage` and set the required glossary style using `\setglossarystyle`.

The default number of columns is 2, but can be changed by redefining

`\glsmcols`

```
\glsmcols
```

to the required number. For example, for a three column glossary:

15 Glossary Styles

```
\usepackage{glossary-mcols}
\renewcommand*{\glsmcols}{3}
\setglossarystyle{mcolindex}
```

Table 15.2: Multicolumn Styles

glossary-mcols Style	Analogous Tree Style
mcolindex	index
mcolindexgroup	indexgroup
mcolindexhypergroup	indexhypergroup
mcoltree	tree
mcoltreegroup	treegroup
mcoltreehypergroup	treehypergroup
mcoltreenoname	treenoname
mcoltreenonamegroup	treenonamegroup
mcoltreenonamehypergroup	treenonamehypergroup
mcolalmtree	almtree
mcolalmtreegroup	almtreegroup
mcolalmtreehypergroup	almtreehypergroup

15.1.8 In-Line Style

This section covers the `glossary-inline` package that supplies the inline style. This is a style that is designed for in-line use (as opposed to block styles, such as lists or tables). This style doesn't display the **number list**.

You will most likely need to redefine `\glossarysection` with this style. For example, suppose you are required to have your glossaries and list of acronyms in a footnote, you can do:

```
\usepackage{glossary-inline}

\renewcommand*{\glossarysection}[2][\textbf{#1}: ]
\setglossarystyle{inline}
```

Note that you need to include `glossary-inline` with `\usepackage` as it's not automatically included by the `glossaries` package and then set the style using `\setglossarystyle`.

Where you need to include your glossaries as a footnote you can do:

```
\footnote{\printglossaries}
```

15 Glossary Styles

The inline style is governed by the following:

`\glsinlineseparator`

`\glsinlineseparator`

This defaults to “; ” and is used between main (i.e. level 0) entries.

`\glsinlinesubseparator`

`\glsinlinesubseparator`

This defaults to “, ” and is used between sub-entries.

`\glsinlineparentchildseparator`

`\glsinlineparentchildseparator`

This defaults to “: ” and is used between a parent main entry and its first sub-entry.

`\glspostinline`

`\glspostinline`

This defaults to “; ” and is used at the end of the glossary.

15.2 Defining your own glossary style

If the predefined styles don't fit your requirements, you can define your own style using:

`\newglossarystyle`

`\newglossarystyle{⟨name⟩}{⟨definitions⟩}`

where `⟨name⟩` is the name of the new glossary style (to be used in `\setglossarystyle`). The second argument `⟨definitions⟩` needs to redefine all of the following:

`theglossary`

`theglossary`

This environment defines how the main body of the glossary should be typeset. Note that this does not include the section heading, the glossary preamble (defined by `\glossarypreamble`) or the glossary postamble (defined by `\glossarypostamble`). For example, the list style uses the description environment, so the `theglossary` environment is simply redefined to begin and end the description environment.

`\glossaryheader`

`\glossaryheader`

This macro indicates what to do at the start of the main body of the glossary. Note that this is not the same as `\glossarypreamble`,

which should not be affected by changes in the glossary style. The list glossary style redefines `\glossaryheader` to do nothing, whereas the longheader glossary style redefines `\glossaryheader` to do a header row.

`\glsgroupheading`

```
\glsgroupheading{⟨label⟩}
```

This macro indicates what to do at the start of each logical block within the main body of the glossary. If you use `makeindex` the glossary is sub-divided into a maximum of twenty-eight logical blocks that are determined by the first character of the sort key (or name key if the sort key is omitted). The sub-divisions are in the following order: symbols, numbers, A, ..., Z. If you use `xindy`, the sub-divisions depend on the language settings.

Note that the argument to `\glsgroupheading` is a label *not* the group title. The group title can be obtained via

`\glsgrouptitle`

```
\glsgrouptitle{⟨label⟩}
```

This obtains the title as follows: if `⟨label⟩` consists of a single non-active character or `⟨label⟩` is equal to `glssymbols` or `glsnumbers` and `\⟨label⟩groupname` exists, this is taken to be the title, otherwise the title is just `⟨label⟩`. (The “symbols” group has the label `glssymbols`, so the command `\glssymbolsgroupname` is used, and the “numbers” group has the label `glsnumbers`, so the command `\glsnumbersgroupname` is used.) If you are using `xindy`, `⟨label⟩` may be an active character (for example `ø`), in which case the title will be set to just `⟨label⟩`. You can redefine `\glsgrouptitle` if this is unsuitable for your document.

A navigation hypertarget can be created using

`\glsnavhypertarget`

```
\glsnavhypertarget{⟨label⟩}{⟨text⟩}
```

For further details about `\glsnavhypertarget`, see section 4.1 in the documented code (`glossaries-code.pdf`).

Most of the predefined glossary styles redefine `\glsgroupheading` to simply ignore its argument. The `listhypergroup` style redefines `\glsgroupheading` as follows:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsgroupheading}[1]{%
\item[\glsnavhypertarget{##1}{\glsgrouptitle{##1}}]}
```

See also `\glsgroupskip` below. (Note that command definitions within `\newglossarystyle` must use `##1` instead of `#1` etc.)

`\glsgroupskip``\glsgroupskip`

This macro determines what to do after one logical group but before the header for the next logical group. The list glossary style simply redefines `\glsgroupskip` to be `\indexspace`, whereas the tabular-like styles redefine `\glsgroupskip` to produce a blank row.

As from version 3.03, the package option `nogroupskip` can be used to suppress this default gap for the predefined styles.

`\glossentry``\glossentry{⟨label⟩}{⟨number list⟩}`

This macro indicates what to do for each level 0 glossary entry. The entry label is given by `⟨label⟩` and the associated **number list** is given by `⟨number list⟩`. You can redefine `\glossentry` to use commands like `\glossentryname{⟨label⟩}`, `\glossentrydesc{⟨label⟩}` and `\glossentrysymbol{⟨label⟩}` to display the name, description and symbol fields, or to access other fields, use commands like `\glentryuseri{⟨label⟩}`. (See Section 9 for further details.) You can also use the following commands:

`\glentryitem``\glentryitem{⟨label⟩}`

This macro will increment and display the associated counter for the main (level 0) entries if the `entrycounter` or `counterwithin` package options have been used. This macro is typically called by `\glossentry` before `\glstarget`. The format of the counter is controlled by the macro

`\glentrycounterlabel``\glentrycounterlabel`

Each time you use a glossary entry it creates a hyperlink (if hyperlinks are enabled) to the relevant line in the glossary. Your new glossary style must therefore redefine `\glossentry` to set the appropriate target. This is done using

`\glstarget``\glstarget{⟨label⟩}{⟨text⟩}`

where `⟨label⟩` is the entry's label. Note that you don't need to worry about whether the `hyperref` package has been loaded, as `\glstarget` won't create a target if `\hypertarget` hasn't been defined.

For example, the list style defines `\glossentry` as follows:

```
\renewcommand*{\glossentry}[2]{%
  \item[\glentryitem{##1}]%
  \glstarget{##1}{\glossentryname{##1}}}
```

15 Glossary Styles

```
\glossentrydesc{##1}\glspostdescription\space ##2}
```

Note also that *⟨number list⟩* will always be of the form

```
\glossaryentrynumbers{\relax
\setentrycounter[⟨Hprefix⟩]{⟨counter name⟩}{format
cmd}{⟨number(s)⟩}}
```

where *⟨number(s)⟩* may contain `\delimN` (to delimit individual numbers) and/or `\delimR` (to indicate a range of numbers). There may be multiple occurrences of `\setentrycounter[⟨Hprefix⟩]{⟨counter name⟩}{format cmd}{⟨number(s)⟩}`, but note that the entire number list is enclosed within the argument of `\glossaryentrynumbers`. The user can redefine this to change the way the entire number list is formatted, regardless of the glossary style. However the most common use of `\glossaryentrynumbers` is to provide a means of suppressing the number list altogether. (In fact, the `nonumberlist` option redefines `\glossaryentrynumbers` to ignore its argument.) Therefore, when you define a new glossary style, you don't need to worry about whether the user has specified the `nonumberlist` package option.

```
\subglossentry \subglossentry{⟨level⟩}{⟨label⟩}{⟨number list⟩}
```

This is used to display sub-entries. The first argument, *⟨level⟩*, indicates the sub-entry level. This must be an integer from 1 (first sub-level) onwards. The remaining arguments are analogous to those for `\glossentry` described above.

```
\glssubentryitem \glssubentryitem{⟨label⟩}
```

This macro will increment and display the associated counter for the level 1 entries if the `subentrycounter` package option has been used. This macro is typically called by `\subglossentry` before `\glstarget`. The format of the counter is controlled by the macro

```
\glssubentrycounterlabel \glssubentrycounterlabel
```

Note that `\printglossary` (which `\printglossaries` calls) sets

```
\currentglossary \currentglossary
```

to the current glossary label, so it's possible to create a glossary style

that varies according to the glossary type.

For further details of these commands, see section 1.15 “Displaying the glossary” in the documented code (`glossaries-code.pdf`).

Example 20 (Creating a completely new style)

If you want a completely new style, you will need to redefine all of the commands and the environment listed above.

For example, suppose you want each entry to start with a bullet point. This means that the glossary should be placed in the `itemize` environment, so `theglossary` should start and end that environment. Let’s also suppose that you don’t want anything between the glossary groups (so `\glsgroupheading` and `\glsgroupskip` should do nothing) and suppose you don’t want anything to appear immediately after `\begin{theglossary}` (so `\glossaryheader` should do nothing). In addition, let’s suppose the symbol should appear in brackets after the name, followed by the description and last of all the **number list** should appear within square brackets at the end. Then you can create this new glossary style, called, say, `mylist`, as follows:

```
\newglossarystyle{mylist}{%
% put the glossary in the itemize environment:
\renewenvironment{theglossary}%
  {\begin{itemize}}{\end{itemize}}%
% have nothing after \begin{theglossary}:
\renewcommand*{\glossaryheader}{}%
% have nothing between glossary groups:
\renewcommand*{\glsgroupheading}[1]{}%
\renewcommand*{\glsgroupskip}{}%
% set how each entry should appear:
\renewcommand*{\glossentry}[2]{%
\item % bullet point
\glstarget{##1}{\glossentryname{##1}}% the entry name
\space (\glossentrysymbol{##1})% the symbol in brackets
\space \glossentrydesc{##1}% the description
\space [##2]% the number list in square brackets
}%
% set how sub-entries appear:
\renewcommand*{\subglossentry}[3]{%
\glossentry{##2}{##3}}%
}
```

Note that this style creates a flat glossary, where sub-entries are displayed in exactly the same way as the top level entries. It also hasn’t used `\glstryitem` or `\glssubentryitem` so it won’t be affected by the `entrycounter`, `counterwithin` or `subentrycounter` package options.

15 Glossary Styles

Variations:

- You might want the entry name to be capitalised, in which case use `\Glossentryname` instead of `\glossentryname`.
- You might want to check if the symbol hasn't been set and omit the parentheses if the symbol is absent. In this case you can use `\ifglshassymbol` (see Section 16):

```
\renewcommand*{\glossentry}[2]{%
\item % bullet point
\glstarget{##1}{\glossentryname{##1}}% the entry name
\ifglshassymbol{##1}% check if symbol exists
{%
  \space (\glossentrysymbol{##1})% the symbol in brackets
}%
}% no symbol so do nothing
\space \glossentrydesc{##1}% the description
\space [##2]% the number list in square brackets
}%
```

Example 21 (Creating a new glossary style based on an existing style)

If you want to define a new style that is a slightly modified version of an existing style, you can use `\setglossarystyle` within the second argument of `\newglossarystyle` followed by whatever alterations you require. For example, suppose you want a style like the list style but you don't want the extra vertical space created by `\indexspace` between groups, then you can create a new glossary style called, say, `mylist` as follows:

```
\newglossarystyle{mylist}{%
\setglossarystyle{list}% base this style on the list style
\renewcommand{\glsgroupskip}{}% make nothing happen
                                % between groups
}
```

(In this case, you can actually achieve the same effect using the list style in combination with the package option `nogroupskip`.)

Example 22 (Example: creating a glossary style that uses the user1, ..., user6 keys)

Suppose each entry not only has an associated symbol, but also units (stored in user1) and dimension (stored in user2). Then you can define a glossary style that displays each entry in a longtable as follows:

```
\newglossarystyle{long6col}{%
% put the glossary in a longtable environment:
\renewenvironment{theglossary}%
{\begin{longtable}{lp{\glsgdescwidth}cccp{\glspagelistwidth}}}%
{\end{longtable}}%
% Set the table's header:
\renewcommand*{\glossaryheader}{%
\bfseries Term & \bfseries Description & \bfseries Symbol &
\bfseries Units & \bfseries Dimensions & \bfseries Page List
\\ \endhead}%
% No heading between groups:
\renewcommand*{\glsgroupheading}[1]{}%
% Main (level 0) entries displayed in a row optionally numbered:
\renewcommand*{\glossentry}[2]{%
\glssentryitem{##1}% Entry number if required
\glstarget{##1}{\glossentryname{##1}}% Name
& \glossentrydesc{##1}% Description
& \glossentrysymbol{##1}% Symbol
& \glssentryuseri{##1}% Units
& \glssentryuserii{##1}% Dimensions
& ##2% Page list
\tabularnewline % end of row
}%
% Similarly for sub-entries (no sub-entry numbers):
\renewcommand*{\subglossentry}[3]{%
% ignoring first argument (sub-level)
\glstarget{##2}{\glossentryname{##2}}% Name
& \glossentrydesc{##2}% Description
& \glossentrysymbol{##2}% Symbol
& \glssentryuseri{##2}% Units
& \glssentryuserii{##2}% Dimensions
& ##3% Page list
\tabularnewline % end of row
}%
% Nothing between groups:
\renewcommand*{\glsgroupskip}{}%
}
```

16 Utilities

This section describes some utility commands. Additional commands can be found in the documented code (glossaries-code.pdf).

Some of the commands described here take a comma-separated list as an argument. As with L^AT_EX's `\@for` command, make sure your list doesn't have an unwanted spaces in it as they don't get stripped.

`\foralllglossaries`

```
\foralllglossaries[<glossary list>]{<cs>}{<body>}
```

This iterates through *<glossary list>*, a comma-separated list of glossary labels (as supplied when the glossary was defined). At each iteration *<cs>* (which must be a control sequence) is set to the glossary label for the current iteration and *<body>* is performed. If *<glossary list>* is omitted, the default is to iterate over all glossaries.

`\forallglentries`

```
\forallglentries[<glossary label>]{<cs>}{<body>}
```

This iterates through all entries in the glossary given by *<glossary label>*. At each iteration *<cs>* (which must be a control sequence) is set to the entry label for the current iteration and *<body>* is performed. If *<glossary label>* is omitted, `\glsdefaulttype` (usually the main glossary) is used.

`\forallallglentries`

```
\forallallglentries[<glossary list>]{<cs>}{<body>}
```

This is like `\forallglentries` but for each glossary in *<glossary list>* (a comma-separated list of glossary labels). If *<glossary list>* is omitted, the default is the list of all defined glossaries. At each iteration *<cs>* is set to the entry label and *<body>* is performed. (The current glossary label can be obtained using `\glsentrytype{<cs>}` within *<body>*.)

`\ifglossaryexists`

```
\ifglossaryexists<label><true part><false part>
```

This checks if the glossary given by $\langle label \rangle$ exists. If it does $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$.

`\ifglentryexists`

`\ifglentryexists $\langle label \rangle \langle true part \rangle \langle false part \rangle$`

This checks if the glossary entry given by $\langle label \rangle$ exists. If it does $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$. (Note that `\ifglentryexists` will always be true after the containing glossary has been displayed via `\printglossary` or `\printglossaries` even if the entry is explicitly defined later in the document. This is because the entry has to be defined before it can be displayed in the glossary, see Section 4.8.1 for further details.)

`\glstoifexists`

`\glstoifexists{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle code \rangle$ }`

Does $\langle code \rangle$ if the entry given by $\langle label \rangle$ exists. If it doesn't exist, an error is generated. (This command uses `\ifglentryexists`.)

`\glstoifnoexists`

`\glstoifnoexists{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle code \rangle$ }`

Does the reverse of `\glstoifexists`. (This command uses `\ifglentryexists`.)

`\glstoifexistsorwarn`

`\glstoifexistsorwarnr{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle code \rangle$ }`

As `\glstoifexists` but issues a warning rather than an error if the entry doesn't exist.

`\ifglused`

`\ifglused $\langle label \rangle \langle true part \rangle \langle false part \rangle$`

See Section 14.

`\ifglshaschildren`

`\ifglshaschildren $\langle label \rangle \langle true part \rangle \langle false part \rangle$`

This checks if the glossary entry given by $\langle label \rangle$ has any sub-entries. If it does, $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$.

`\ifglshasparent`

`\ifglshasparent $\langle label \rangle \langle true part \rangle \langle false part \rangle$`

This checks if the glossary entry given by $\langle label \rangle$ has a parent entry. If it does, $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$.

`\ifglshassymbol`

`\ifglshassymbol{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle true part \rangle$ }{ $\langle false part \rangle$ }`

This checks if the glossary entry given by $\langle label \rangle$ has had the symbol field set. If it has, $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$.

`\ifglshaslong`

```
\ifglshaslong{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle true part \rangle$ }{ $\langle false part \rangle$ }
```

This checks if the glossary entry given by $\langle label \rangle$ has had the long field set. If it has, $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$. This should be true for any entry that has been defined via `\newacronym`. There is no check for the existence of $\langle label \rangle$.

`\ifglshasshort`

```
\ifglshasshort{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle true part \rangle$ }{ $\langle false part \rangle$ }
```

This checks if the glossary entry given by $\langle label \rangle$ has had the short field set. If it has, $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$. This should be true for any entry that has been defined via `\newacronym`. There is no check for the existence of $\langle label \rangle$.

`\ifglshasdesc`

```
\ifglshasdesc{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle true part \rangle$ }{ $\langle false part \rangle$ }
```

This checks if the description field is non-empty for the entry given by $\langle label \rangle$. If it has, $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$. Compare with:

`\ifglsdescsuppressed`

```
\ifglsdescsuppressed{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle true part \rangle$ }{ $\langle false part \rangle$ }
```

This checks if the description field has been set to just `\nopostdesc` for the entry given by $\langle label \rangle$. If it has, $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$. There is no check for the existence of $\langle label \rangle$.

For all other fields you can use:

```
\ifglshasfield{ $\langle field \rangle$ }{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle true part \rangle$ }{ $\langle false part \rangle$ }
```

This checks if the field given by $\langle field \rangle$ for the entry identified by $\langle label \rangle$ is empty. If it is, $\langle true part \rangle$ is performed, otherwise $\langle false part \rangle$. If the field supplied is unrecognised $\langle false part \rangle$ is performed and a warning is issued. Unlike the above commands, such as `\ifglshasshort`, an error occurs if the entry is undefined.

17 Prefixes or Determiners

The glossaries-prefix package provides additional keys that can be used as prefixes. For example, if you want to specify determiners (such as “a”, “an” or “the”). The glossaries-prefix package automatically loads the glossaries package and has the same package options.

The extra keys for `\newglossaryentry` are as follows:

prefix The prefix associated with the text key. This defaults to nothing.

prefixplural The prefix associated with the plural key. This defaults to nothing.

prefixfirst The prefix associated with the first key. If omitted, this defaults to the value of the prefix key.

prefixfirstplural The prefix associated with the firstplural key. If omitted, this defaults to the value of the prefixplural key.

Example 23 (Defining Determiners)

Here’s the start of my example document:

```
documentclass{article}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[toc,acronym]{glossaries-prefix}
```

Note that I’ve simply replaced glossaries from previous sample documents with glossaries-prefix. Now for a sample definition¹:

```
\newglossaryentry{sample}{name={sample},%
  description={an example},%
  prefix={a~},%
  prefixplural={the\space}%
}
```

Note that I’ve had to explicitly insert a space after the prefix. This allows for the possibility of prefixes that shouldn’t have a space, such as:

¹Single letter words, such as “a” and “I” should typically not appear at the end of a line, hence the non-breakable space after “a” in the prefix field.

17 Prefixes or Determiners

```
\newglossaryentry{oeil}{name={oeil},  
  plural={yeux},  
  description={eye},  
  prefix={l'},  
  prefixplural={les\space}}
```

Where a space is required at the end of the prefix, you must use a spacing command, such as `\space`, `_` (backslash space) or `~` due to the automatic spacing trimming performed in $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ options.

The prefixes can also be used with acronyms. For example:

```
\newacronym  
[%  
  prefix={an\space},prefixfirst={a~}%  
]{svm}{SVM}{support vector machine}
```

The glossaries-prefix package provides convenient commands to use these prefixes with commands such as `\gls`. Note that the prefix is not considered part of the **link text**, so it's not included in the hyperlink (where hyperlinks are enabled).

`\pgls` `\pgls[$\langle options \rangle$]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }[$\langle insert \rangle$]`

This prepends the value of the `prefix` key (or `prefixfirst` key, on **first use**) in front of `\gls[$\langle options \rangle$]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }[$\langle insert \rangle$]`.

`\Pgls` `\Pgls[$\langle options \rangle$]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }[$\langle insert \rangle$]`

If the `prefix` key (or `prefixfirst`, on first use) has been set, this displays the value of that key with the first letter converted to upper case followed by `\gls[$\langle options \rangle$]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }[$\langle insert \rangle$]`. If that key hasn't been set, this is equivalent to `\GLS[$\langle options \rangle$]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }[$\langle insert \rangle$]`.

`\PGLS` `\PGLS[$\langle options \rangle$]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }[$\langle insert \rangle$]`

As `\pgls` but converts the prefix to upper case and uses `\GLS` instead of `\gls`.

`\pglsp1` `\pglsp1[$\langle options \rangle$]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }[$\langle insert \rangle$]`

This prepends the value of the `prefixplural` key (or `prefixfirstplural` key, on **first use**) in front of `\glsp1[$\langle options \rangle$]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }[$\langle insert \rangle$]`.

`\PglSpl` `\PglSpl[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]`

If the prefixplural key (or prefixfirstplural, on first use) has been set, this displays the value of that key with the first letter converted to upper case followed by `\glSpl[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]`. If that key hasn't been set, this is equivalent to `\GLSpl[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]`.

`\PGLSpl` `\PGLSpl[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]`

As `\pglSpl` but converts the prefix to upper case and uses `\GLSpl` instead of `\glSpl`.

Example 24 (Using Prefixes)

Continuing from Example 23, now that I've defined my entries, I can use them in the text via the above commands:

First use: `\pgls{svm}`. Next use: `\pgls{svm}`.
 Singular: `\pgls{sample}`, `\pgls{oeil}`.
 Plural: `\pglspl{sample}`, `\pglspl{oeil}`.

which produces:

First use: a support vector machine (SVM). Next use: an SVM. Singular: a sample, l'oeil. Plural: the samples, les yeux.

For a complete document, see [sample-prefix.tex](#).

This package also provides the following commands:

`\ifglshasprefix` `\ifglshasprefix{⟨label⟩}{⟨true part⟩}{⟨false part⟩}`

Does *⟨true part⟩* if the entry identified by *⟨label⟩* has a non-empty value for the prefix key.

This package also provides the following commands:

`\ifglshasprefixplural` `\ifglshasprefixplural{⟨label⟩}{⟨true part⟩}{⟨false part⟩}`

Does *⟨true part⟩* if the entry identified by *⟨label⟩* has a non-empty value for the prefixplural key.

`\ifglshasprefixfirst` `\ifglshasprefixfirst{⟨label⟩}{⟨true part⟩}{⟨false part⟩}`

Does $\langle true\ part \rangle$ if the entry identified by $\langle label \rangle$ has a non-empty value for the prefixfirst key.

`\ifglshasprefixfirstplural`

```
\ifglshasprefixfirstplural{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle true\ part \rangle$ }{ $\langle false\ part \rangle$ }
```

Does $\langle true\ part \rangle$ if the entry identified by $\langle label \rangle$ has a non-empty value for the prefixfirstplural key.

`\glentryprefix`

```
\glentryprefix{ $\langle label \rangle$ }
```

Displays the value of the prefix key for the entry given by $\langle label \rangle$. (No check is performed to determine if the entry exists.)

`\glentryprefixfirst`

```
\glentryprefixfirst{ $\langle label \rangle$ }
```

Displays the value of the prefixfirst key for the entry given by $\langle label \rangle$. (No check is performed to determine if the entry exists.)

`\glentryprefixplural`

```
\glentryprefixplural{ $\langle label \rangle$ }
```

Displays the value of the prefixplural key for the entry given by $\langle label \rangle$. (No check is performed to determine if the entry exists.)

`\glentryprefixfirstplural`

```
\glentryprefixfirstplural{ $\langle label \rangle$ }
```

Displays the value of the prefixfirstplural key for the entry given by $\langle label \rangle$. (No check is performed to determine if the entry exists.)

There are also variants that convert the first letter to upper case²:

`\Glentryprefix`

```
\Glentryprefix{ $\langle label \rangle$ }
```

`\Glentryprefixfirst`

```
\Glentryprefixfirst{ $\langle label \rangle$ }
```

`\Glentryprefixplural`

```
\Glentryprefixplural{ $\langle label \rangle$ }
```

`\Glentryprefixfirstplural`

²The earlier caveats about initial non-Latin characters apply.

```
\Glsentryprefixfirstplural{⟨label⟩}
```

As with analogous commands such as `\Glsentrytext`, these commands aren't expandable so can't be used in PDF bookmarks.

Example 25 (Adding Determiner to Glossary Style)

You can use the above commands to define a new glossary style that uses the determiner. For example, the following style is a slight modification of the list style that inserts the prefix before the name:

```
\newglossarystyle{plist}{%
  \setglossarystyle{list}%
  \renewcommand*{\glossentry}[2]{%
    \item[\glsentryitem{##1}%
      \Glsentryprefix{##1}%
      \glstarget{##1}{\glossentryname{##1}}]
    \glossentrydesc{##1}\glspostdescription\space ##2}%
}
```

18 Accessibility Support

Limited accessibility support is provided by the accompanying glossaries-accsupp package, but note that this package is experimental and it requires the accsupp package which is also listed as experimental. This package defines additional keys that may be used when defining glossary entries. The keys are as follows:

access The replacement text corresponding to the name key.

textaccess The replacement text corresponding to the text key.

firstaccess The replacement text corresponding to the first key.

pluralaccess The replacement text corresponding to the plural key.

firstpluralaccess The replacement text corresponding to the firstplural key.

symbolaccess The replacement text corresponding to the symbol key.

symbolpluralaccess The replacement text corresponding to the symbolplural key.

descriptionaccess The replacement text corresponding to the description key.

descriptionpluralaccess The replacement text corresponding to the descriptionplural key.

longaccess The replacement text corresponding to the long key (used by \newacronym).

shortaccess The replacement text corresponding to the short key (used by \newacronym).

longpluralaccess The replacement text corresponding to the longplural key (used by \newacronym).

shortpluralaccess The replacement text corresponding to the shortplural key (used by \newacronym).

18 Accessibility Support

For example:

```
\newglossaryentry{tex}{name={\TeX},description={Document  
preparation language},access={TeX}}
```

Now `\gls{tex}` will be equivalent to

```
\BeginAccSupp{ActualText=TeX}\TeX\EndAccSupp{ }
```

The sample file `sampleaccsupp.tex` illustrates the `glossaries-accsupp` package.

See section 6 in the documented code (`glossaries-code.pdf`) for further details. It is recommended that you also read the `accsupp` documentation.

19 Troubleshooting

The glossaries package comes with a minimal file called `minimalgls.tex` which can be used for testing. This should be located in the `samples` subdirectory (folder) of the glossaries documentation directory. The location varies according to your operating system and T_EX installation. For example, on my Linux partition it can be found in `/usr/local/texlive/2013/texmf-dist/doc/latex/glossaries/`. Further information on debugging L^AT_EX code is available at <http://www.dickimaw-books.com/latex/minexample/>.

Below is a list of some frequently asked questions about the glossaries package. For a complete list, consult the glossaries FAQ¹. If that doesn't help, try posting your query to somewhere like the comp.text.tex newsgroup, the L^AT_EX Community Forum² or T_EX on StackExchange³. Bug reports can be submitted via my package bug report form⁴.

1. **Q.** I get the error message:

```
! Undefined control sequence.
\in@ #1#2->\begingroup \def \in@@
```

A. This error can occur if you have a fragile command in one of your entry definitions. In most cases using `\glsnoexpandfields` before defining your entry should fix this, but there are still a few fragile commands that will still cause this error even with `\glsnoexpandfields`. If this is the case put `\protect` in front of the fragile command.

2. **Q.** I get the error message:

```
Missing \begin{document}
```

A. Check you are using an up to date version of the xkeyval package.

¹<http://www.dickimaw-books.com/faqs/glossariesfaq.html>

²<http://www.latex-community.org/>

³<http://tex.stackexchange.com/>

⁴<http://www.dickimaw-books.com/bug-report.html>

3. **Q.** When I use `xindy`, I get the following error message:

```
ERROR: CHAR: index 0 should be less than the length of
the string
```

A. `xindy` discards all commands and braces from the sort string. If your sort string (either specified by the sort key or the name key) only consists of commands, this will be treated by `xindy` as an empty sort string, which produces an error message in newer versions of `xindy`. For example, the following will cause a problem:

```
\newglossaryentry{alpha}{name={\ensuremath{\alpha}},
description=alpha}
```

Either use a different sort key for the entry, for example:

```
\newglossaryentry{alpha}{sort=alpha,
name={\ensuremath{\alpha}},
description=alpha}
```

or, if all entries are like this, you may prefer to use the `sort=use` or `sort=def` package options. See Section 2.4 for further details of the sort option.

4. **Q.** I've used the `smallcaps` option, but the acronyms are displayed in normal sized upper case letters.

A. The `smallcaps` package option uses `\textsc` to typeset the acronyms. This command converts lower case letters to small capitals, while upper case letters remain their usual size. Therefore you need to specify the acronym in lower case letters.

5. **Q.** My acronyms won't break across a line when they're expanded.

A. PDF \LaTeX can break hyperlinks across a line, but \LaTeX can't. If you can't use PDF \LaTeX then disable the `first use` links using the package option `hyperfirst=false`.

6. **Q.** How do I change the font that the acronyms are displayed in?

A. The easiest way to do this is to specify the `smaller` package option and redefine `\acronymfont` to use the required typesetting command. For example, suppose you would like the acronyms displayed in a sans-serif font, then you can do:

```
\usepackage[smaller]{glossaries}
\renewcommand*{\acronymfont}[1]{\textsf{#1}}
```

7. **Q.** How do I change the font that the acronyms are displayed in on **first use**?

A. The easiest way to do this is to specify the smaller package option and redefine `\firstacronymfont` to use the required command. Note that if you don't want the acronym on subsequent use to use `\textsmaller`, you will also need to redefine `\acronymfont`, as above. For example to make the acronym emphasized on **first use**, but use the surrounding font for subsequent use, you can do:

```
\usepackage[smaller]{glossaries}
\renewcommand*{\firstacronymfont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\renewcommand*{\acronymfont}[1]{#1}
```

8. **Q.** I don't have Perl installed, do I have to use **makeglossaries**?

A. No. Although it is strongly recommended, you don't have to use **makeglossaries**. If you prefer a GUI application and have Java installed, you can use **makeglossariesgui** instead. Otherwise you can just call **makeindex** explicitly (see Section 1.3.3). Note that you can't use **xindy** if you don't have Perl installed.

9. **Q.** I'm used to using the glossary package: are there any instructions on migrating from the glossary package to the glossaries package?

A. Read "Upgrading from the glossary package to the glossaries package" ([glossary2glossaries.pdf](#)) which should be available from the same location as this document.

10. **Q.** I'm using babel but the fixed names haven't been translated.

A. The glossaries package currently only supports the following languages: Brazilian Portuguese, Danish, Dutch, English, French, German, Irish, Italian, Hungarian, Polish, Serbian and Spanish. If you want to add another language, send me the translations, and I'll add them to the next version.

If you are using one of the above languages, but the text hasn't been translated, try using the glossaries package option `translate=babel`. Also, try adding the language as a global option to the class file.

11. **Q.** My glossaries haven't appeared.

A. Remember to do the following:

- Add `\makeglossaries` to the document preamble.

- Use either `\printglossary` for each glossary that has been defined or `\printglossaries`.
- Use the commands listed in Section 6, Section 7 or Section 8 for each entry that you want to appear in the glossary.
- Run `LATEX` on your document, then run `makeglossaries`, then run `LATEX` on your document again. If you want the glossaries to appear in the table of contents, you will need an extra `LATEX` run. If any of your entries cross-reference an entry that's not referenced in the main body of the document, you will need to run `makeglossaries` (see Section 1.3) after the second `LATEX` run, followed by another `LATEX` run.

Check the log files (`.log`, `.glg` etc) for any warnings.

12. **Q.** Why is glossaries creating an empty `.glo` file?

A. Because you haven't used any entries in the `main` glossary via commands such as `\gls`. If you don't want to use this glossary, you can suppress its creation via the package option `no-main`.

13. **Q.** It is possible to change the rules used to sort the glossary entries?

A. If it's for an individual entry, then you can use the entry's sort key to sort it according to a different term. If it's for the entire alphabet, then you will need to use `xindy` (instead of `makeindex`) and use an appropriate `xindy` language module. Writing `xindy` modules or styles is beyond the scope of this manual. Further information about `xindy` can be found at the Xindy Web Site⁵. There is also a link to the `xindy` mailing list from that site.

If you want to sort according to order of definition or order of use, use the sort package option described in Section 2.4.

14. **Q.** I get an error when using TeX4HT with glossaries.

A. TeX4HT seems to have a problem with the glossary styles that use `\indexspace`. I don't know enough about TeX4HT to find out why. Either use a different glossary style or redefine the style command that uses `\indexspace`. For example, if you are using the `list` style, try:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsgroupskip}{} }
```

⁵<http://xindy.sourceforge.net/>

or

```
\renewcommand*{\glsgroupskip}{\item[]}
```

Index

Symbols

\@gls@codepage	39
\@glsorder	39
\@istfilename	39
\@newglossary	39
\@xdylanguage	39

A

\AA	16
\Ac	134
\ac	134
accsupp package	183, 184
\Acf	134
\acf	134
\Acfp	134
\acfp	134
\Acl	134
\acl	134
\Aclp	134
\aclp	134
\Acp	134
\acp	134
\ACRfull	133
\Acrfull	133, 134
\acrfull	133, 134, 137–139, 143
\ACRfullfmt	133
\Acrfullfmt	133
\acrfullfmt	133, 141, 143
\ACRfullpl	133
\Acrfullpl	133, 134
\acrfullpl	133, 134
\ACRfullplfmt	133
\Acrfullplfmt	133
\acrfullplfmt	133
\ACRlong	132
\Acrlong	132, 134
\acrlong	132, 134
\ACRlongpl	132
\Acrlongpl	132, 134
\acrlongpl	132, 134

acronym styles:

dua	137, 138, 141
dua-desc	138, 139
footnote	137, 139, 141
footnote-desc	139
footnote-sc	139
footnote-sc-desc	20, 139
footnote-sm	139
footnote-sm-desc	139
long-sc-short	137, 138, 141
long-sc-short-desc	138
long-short	
.....	100, 137, 138, 140, 141
long-short-desc	138, 141
long-sm-short	137, 138
long-sm-short-desc	138
sc-short-long	138
sc-short-long-desc	138
short-long	138
short-long-desc	138
sm-short-long	138
sm-short-long-desc	138
\acronymentry	136, 138, 140, 145
\acronymfont	59, 131,
.....	133, 136, 137, 140, 186, 187
\acronymname	31
\acronymsort	136, 138, 140, 145
\acronymtype	45, 47,
.....	56, 57, 80, 105, 129, 130, 148
\ACRshort	132
\Acrshort	132, 134
\acrshort	11, 131, 134
\ACRshortpl	132
\Acrshortpl	132, 134
\acrshortpl	132, 134
\Acs	134
\acs	134
\Acsp	134
\acsp	134
\addcontentsline	45

Index

- align (environment) 153
- \altnewglossary 128
- amsmath package 153
- \andname 110
- arara 32
- array package 160, 163

- B**
- babel package 28,
29, 32, 43, 44, 67, 129, 187
- beamer class 152, 153
- beamer package 30

- C**
- \chapter 118
- \chapter* 48, 118
- \currentglossary 171

- D**
- datatool package 118
- \DeclareAcronymList ...
..... 57, 98, 130
- \defentryfmt 131
- \defglentryfmt 89,
93, 94, 98, 98, 130, 136, 140
- \DefineAcronymShortcuts 58
- \delimN 171
- \delimR 171
- description (environment)
..... 156–158, 168
- \descriptionname 31
- doc package 2
- document (environment) . 81, 82
- \dtlcompare 118
- \dtlicompare 118
- \dtlletterindexcompare 118
- \dtlwordindexcompare .. 118

- E**
- \emph 90
- entry location 8
- \entryname 31
- environments:
 align 153
- description .. 156–158, 168
- document 81, 82
- equation 21
- frame 152
- itemize 172
- longtable
 119, 158, 160, 161, 174
- multicols 166
- supertabular 161, 163
- theglossary .. 168, 168, 172
- equation (environment) ... 21
- etex package 43
- etoolbox package 53, 98
- Extended Latin Alphabet 8
- extended Latin character
..... 8, 8–10, 67

- F**
- file types
 .alg 34
- .aux 35, 36, 122
- .glg 34, 37, 38, 188
- .glg2 2
- .glo 36–38, 188
- .gls 37, 38
- .glsdefs 82
- .ist 38, 39, 55, 64, 65
- .log 188
- .tex 37, 38
- .xdy ... 37, 39, 55, 64, 65, 121
- glo2 2
- gls2 2
- first use 8
- flag 9, 92
- text 9
- \firstacronymfont
 . 100, 136, 136, 137, 138, 187
- flowfram package 161
- fntcount package 125
- \footnote 139
- \foralllglossaries 175
- \foralllglsentries 175
- \forallrglsentries 175
- frame (environment) 152

- G**
- \Genacrfullformat 100
- \genacrfullformat
 99, 100, 136, 140–142
- \GenericAcronymFields .
 141, 145
- \Genplacrfullformat ... 100
- \genplacrfullformat 99, 100
- german package 29

Index

- glossaries-accsupp package ...
 - 27, 70, 71, 183, 184
- glossaries-babel package ... 43, 44
- glossaries-polyglossia package 32, 43
- glossaries-prefix package
 - 27, 70, 71, 178, 179
- glossary counters:
 - glossaryentry 48
 - glossarysubentry 49
- glossary package .. 1, 11, 149, 187
- glossary styles:
 - altlist ... 138, 139, 147, 157
 - altlistgroup 157
 - altlisthypergroup ... 157
 - altlong4col 156, 159
 - altlong4colborder ... 159
 - altlong4colheader ... 159
 - altlong4colheaderborder
 - 159
 - altlongragged4col ... 161
 - altlongragged4colborder
 - 161
 - altlongragged4colheader
 - 161
 - altlongragged4colheaderborder
 - 161
 - altsuper4col . 156, 162, 163
 - altsuper4colborder .. 163
 - altsuper4colheader .. 163
 - altsuper4colheaderborder
 - 163
 - altsuperragged4col .. 164
 - altsuperragged4colborder
 - 164
 - altsuperragged4colheader
 - 164
 - altsuperragged4colheaderborder
 - 164
 - alttree 165–167
 - alttreegroup 166, 167
 - alttreehypergroup 166, 167
 - index 165–167
 - indexgroup 165, 167
 - indexhypergroup . 165, 167
 - inline 23, 167, 168
 - list 50,
 - 157, 168–170, 173, 182, 188
 - listdotted 156, 158
 - listgroup 157
 - listhypergroup
 - 157, 165, 166, 169
 - long 156, 158, 159
 - long3col 155, 159
 - long3colborder .. 155, 159
 - long3colheader .. 155, 159
 - long3colheaderborder
 - 155, 159
 - long4col 154, 159
 - long4colborder 159
 - long4colheader 159
 - long4colheaderborder 159
 - longborder 158
 - longheader 158, 169
 - longheaderborder 119, 158
 - longragged 160
 - longragged3col .. 160, 161
 - longragged3colborder 161
 - longragged3colheader 161
 - longragged3colheaderborder
 - 161
 - longraggedborder 160
 - longraggedheader 160
 - longraggedheaderborder
 - 160
 - mcolalttree 167
 - mcolalttreegroup 167
 - mcolalttreehypergroup
 - 167
 - mcolindex 166, 167
 - mcolindexgroup 167
 - mcolindexhypergroup . 167
 - mcoltree 167
 - mcoltreegroup 167
 - mcoltreehypergroup .. 167
 - mcoltreenoname 167
 - mcoltreenonamegroup . 167
 - mcoltreenonamehypergroup
 - 167
 - super 161, 162
 - super3col 162
 - super3colborder 162
 - super3colheader 162
 - super3colheaderborder
 - 162
 - super4col 154, 162, 163
 - super4colborder . 162, 163
 - super4colheader . 162, 163

Index

- super4colheaderborder 163
- superborder 162
- superheader 162
- superheaderborder 119, 162
- superragged 163, 164
- superragged3col 164
- superragged3colborder 164
- superragged3colheader 164
- superragged3colheaderborder 164
- superraggedborder ... 164
- superraggedheader ... 164
- superraggedheaderborder 164
- tree 145, 165–167
- treegroup 165, 167
- treehypergroup .. 165, 167
- treenoname 165, 167
- treenonamegroup . 165, 167
- treenonamehypergroup 165, 167
- glossary-inline package 167
- glossary-list package .. 50, 120, 156
- glossary-long package 50, 120, 158, 160
- glossary-longragged package .. 160
- glossary-mcols package 50, 166, 167
- glossary-super package 50, 120, 161, 163
- glossary-superragged package . 163
- glossary-tree package . 50, 120, 165
- glossaryentry (counter) 48, 49
- \glossaryentrynumbers . 171
- \glossaryheader 157, 168, 169, 172
- \glossaryname 31, 43
- \glossarypostamble 104, 119, 168
- \glossarypreamble 49, 119, 168
- \glossarysection 167
- \glossarystyle 118
- glossarysubentry (counter) 49
- \glossentry 170, 170, 171
- \Glossentrydesc 113
- \glossentrydesc ... 113, 170
- \Glossentryname ... 112, 173
- \glossentryname 111, 170, 173
- \Glossentrysymbol 114
- \glossentrysymbol . 114, 170
- \GLS 8, 68, 92, 179
- \Gls 8, 28, 68, 71, 92, 134, 149, 179
- \gls 8, 9, 33, 42, 44, 68, 89, 91, 92, 93, 94, 98, 99, 101–103, 107, 123, 131, 134, 138, 142, 149, 151, 152, 179, 188
- \gls* 44
- \glsadd 105
- \glsaddall 21, 105
- \glsaddall options types 105
- \glsaddallunused 106
- \glsaddkey 70, 72, 73, 73
- \GlsAddXdyAttribute 90, 123
- \GlsAddXdyCounters 123, 125
- \GlsAddXdyLocation 124, 126
- \glsautoprefix 47
- \glscapscase 99, 140
- \glsclearpage 46
- \glsclosebrace 121
- \glscustomtext 98, 131
- \GlsDeclareNoHyperList 45, 62, 81, 88, 91
- \glsdefaulttype 56, 79, 80, 98, 175
- \GLSdesc 96
- \Glsdesc 96
- \glsdesc 96
- \glsdescwidth .. 154, 158–164
- \glsdisablehyper .. 102, 103
- \glsdisp 8, 9, 68, 89, 93, 98, 102, 103, 131
- \glsdisplay 68, 98
- \glsdisplayfirst 68, 98
- \glsdisplaynumberlist . 16, 45, 116
- \glsdoifexists 176
- \glsdoifexistsorwarn .. 176
- \glsdoifnoexists 176
- \glsdosanitizesort 52
- \glsenablehyper 102
- \glsentrycounterlabel . 170
- \Glsentrydesc 113
- \glsentrydesc 113
- \Glsentrydescplural ... 113
- \glsentrydescplural ... 113

Index

\Glsentryfirst	112	\Glsentryuseriv	115
\glstentryfirst	112	\glstentryuseriv	115
\Glsentryfirstplural ..	113	\Glsentryuserv	115
\glstentryfirstplural ..	112	\glstentryuserv	115
\glstentryfmt	27, 89, 93, 94, 98, 100, 102, 103, 130	\Glsentryuservi	115
\Glsentryfull	135	\glstentryuservi	115
\glstentryfull .....	.... 135, 137–139, 141, 143	\glsexpandfields	75
\Glsentryfullpl	135	\GLSfirst	94
\glstentryfullpl	135	\Glsfirst	94
\glstentryitem	170, 172	\glsfirst	94
\Glsentrylong 100, 134, 143, 145		\GLSfirstplural	95
\glstentrylong .. 134, 143, 145		\Glsfirstplural	95
\Glsentrylongpl ... 135, 143		\glsfirstplural	95
\glstentrylongpl ... 135, 143		\glsgenacfmt .....	.... 99, 100, 136, 140, 142
\Glsentryname	111	\glsgenentryfmt . 99, 140, 142	
\glstentryname	111, 115	\glsgetgrouptitle	169
\glstentrynumberlist 45, 116		\glsglossarymark .....	..... 46, 46, 119, 119
\Glsentryplural	112	\glsgroupheading .. 169, 172	
\glstentryplural	112	\glsgroupskip .. 156, 170, 172	
\Glsentryprefix	181	\glshyperlink .. 103, 111, 115	
\glstentryprefix	181	\glshypernavsep	157
\Glsentryprefixfirst .. 181		\glsIfListOfAcronyms .. 57	
\glstentryprefixfirst .. 181		\glsifplural	99, 140
\Glsentryprefixfirstplural	181	\glsinlineparentchildseparator	168, 168
\glstentryprefixfirstplural	181	\glsinlineseparator 168, 168	
\Glsentryprefixplural . 181		\glsinlinesubseparator	168, 168
\glstentryprefixplural . 181		\glsinsert	98
\Glsentryshort	135	\glslabel	98
\glstentryshort	135	\glslabeltok	141
\Glsentryshortpl	135	\glslink	89, 92, 93, 100, 102, 105, 123, 145
\glstentryshortpl	135	\glslink options	
\Glsentrysymbol	114	counter	91, 123
\glstentrysymbol ... 100, 114		format	89, 90, 116, 123
\Glsentrysymbolplural . 114		hyper	89, 91, 102, 105
\glstentrysymbolplural . 114		local	91
\Glsentrytext .....	..... 74, 87, 112, 134, 182	\glslink*	92
\glstentrytext .....	... 73, 87, 110, 112, 115, 134	\glslistdottedwidth ... 158	
\Glsentryuseri	114	\glslocalreset	151
\glstentryuseri ... 114, 170		\glslocalresetall	151
\Glsentryuserii	115	\glslocalunset	151
\glstentryuserii	114	\glslocalunsetall	151
\Glsentryuseriii	115	\gslongtok	141
\glstentryuseriii	115	\glsmcols	166
		\glsmoveentry	81

Index

\GLSname	95	\GlsSetXdyLanguage	
\Glsname	95	.....	35, 56, 63, 122
\glsname	95	\GlsSetXdyLocationClassOrder	
\glsnamefont	120, 137	.....	126
\glsnavhypertarget	169	\GlsSetXdyMinRangeLength	
\glsnoexpandfields	76	.....	84, 127
\glsnoidxdisplayloc ...	86	\glsshorttok	141
\glsnumberformat	125	\glssortnumberfmt	52
\glsnumberlistloop	85	\glssubentrycounterlabel	
\glsnumbersgroupname ..	31	.....	171
\glsnumbersgrouptitle .	169	\glssubentryitem ..	171, 172
\glsnumlistlastsep	116	\GLSsymbol	96
\glsnumlistsep	116	\Glsymbol	96
\glsopenbrace	121	\glssymbol	95, 100
\glspagelistwidth		\glssymbolsgroupname	31, 169
.....	154, 159–164	\glstarget	170, 171
\glspar	67	\GLStext	74, 94
\GLSpl	8, 68, 93, 180	\Glstext	74, 94
\Glspl ...	8, 68, 71, 93, 134, 180	\glstext	
\glspl	8,	.....	74, 93, 94–96, 100, 131, 132
.....	68, 89, 93, 98, 102, 134, 151	\glstextformat ..	89, 100, 111
\GLSplural	95	\glstextup	142
\Glsplural	94	\glstocfalse	45
\glsplural	94	\glstoctrue	45
\glspluralsuffix	68, 71	\glstreeindent	165
\glspostdescription ...	156	\glsunset	151
\glspostinline	168, 168	\glsunsetall	103, 151
\glsprestandardsort .	52, 69	\GlsUseAcrEntryDispStyle	
\glsquote	121	.....	141
\glsrefentry	23, 48, 49	\GlsUseAcrStyleDefs ...	141
\glsreset	131, 151	\GLSuseri	96
\glsresetall	151	\Glsuseri	96
\glsresetentrycounter .	49	\glsuseri	96
\glssee	11, 51, 90, 108, 109	\GLSuserii	97
\glsseeformat	8, 109, 110	\Glsuserii	97
\glsseeitemformat	110	\glsuserii	96
\glsseelastsep	110	\GLSuseriii	97
\glsseelist	8, 110	\Glsuseriii	97
\glsseesep	109	\glsuseriii	97
\glsSetAlphaCompositor	65	\GLSuseriv	97
\glsSetCompositor	65	\Glsuseriv	97
\glssetexpandfield	75	\glsuseriv	97
\glssetnoexpandfield ..	75	\GLSuserv	97
\glsSetSuffixF	84	\Glsuserv	97
\glsSetSuffixFF	84	\glsuserv	97
\glssetwidest	166	\GLSuservi	97
\GlsSetXdyCodePage	35, 56, 122	\Glsuservi	97
\GlsSetXdyFirstLetterAfterDigit		\glsuservi	97
.....	127		

Index

- H**
- html package 102
 - \hyperbf 91
 - \hyperbsf 91
 - \hyperemph 91
 - \hyperit 91
 - \hyperlink 90, 91, 102
 - \hypermd 91
 - \hyperpage 90
 - hyperref package
 - . 2, 84, 85, 87, 88, 90, 93, 102, 111, 116, 124, 125, 170
 - \hyperm 91, 123
 - \hypersc 91
 - \hypersf 91
 - \hypersl 91
 - \hypertarget 102
 - \hypertt 91
 - \hyperup 91
- I**
- \ifglossaryexists 175
 - \ifglsglscsuppressed .. 177
 - \ifglslsentryexists 176
 - \ifglslshaschildren 176
 - \ifglslshasdesc 177
 - \ifglslshaslong 140, 177
 - \ifglslshasparent 176
 - \ifglslshasprefix 180
 - \ifglslshasprefixfirst .. 180
 - \ifglslshasprefixfirstplural 181
 - \ifglslshasprefixplural . 180
 - \ifglshasshort 140, 177
 - \ifglshassymbol ... 173, 176
 - \ifglsucmark 46
 - \ifglused .. 99, 140, 152, 176
 - imakeidx package 62
 - \include 79
 - \index 62, 90
 - index package 62
 - \indexname 129
 - \indexspace
 - 157, 165, 170, 173, 188
 - \input 79
 - inputenc package
 - 18, 24, 28, 69, 71, 122
 - \inputencodingname 122
 - \item 157
- J**
- \jobname 65
- L**
- \label 47
 - latex 2, 88
 - latexmk 32
 - Latin alphabet 9, 10, 12, 28
 - Latin character 8, 9, 9, 128
 - link text . 9, 87–89, 92, 98, 100, 179
 - \loadglsentries 79, 131
 - location list *see* number list
 - \longnewglossaryentry .
 - 66, 73, 79, 82
 - \longprovideglossaryentry
 - 66
 - longtable (environment) ..
 - 119, 158, 160, 161, 174
 - longtable package 50, 158
- M**
- \makefirstuc 46, 100
 - makeglossaries
 - . 9, 9, 14, 17, 18, 21–26, 28, 33–38, 42, 48, 55, 107, 116, 117, 122, 128, 187, 188
 - \makeglossaries 33,
 - 41, 64, 71, 84, 85, 107, 117, 123, 124, 126, 127, 129, 187
 - makeglossariesgui
 - 9, 33, 37, 187
 - makeidx package 62
 - makeindex 9, 9, 12–14,
 - 17, 18, 21–26, 28, 32–36, 38, 39, 43, 48, 52, 55, 64, 76, 84, 90, 109, 116, 117, 128, 155, 165, 169, 187, 188
 - \makenoidxglossaries ..
 - 64, 107, 117
 - \MakeTextUppercase 46
 - \markboth 46
 - memoir class 46, 47
 - \memUchead 47
 - mfirstuc package 2
 - \mfirstucMakeUppercase 46
 - multicol package 166
 - multicols (environment) .. 166

Index

N

nameref package 48
 \newacronym . 19, 56, 58–60,
 70, 71, 79, 81, 99, 108, 130,
 131, 138–141, 149, 177, 183
 \newacronymstyle .. 140, 142
 \newdualentry 106
 \newglossary
 ... 37, 38, 41, 123, 125, 128
 \newglossaryentry
 9, 16, 19, 51,
 52, 61, 66, 66, 71, 73, 79–
 81, 87, 92, 130, 131, 140, 178
 \newglossaryentry options
 access 183
 description 67, 68, 75, 76, 96,
 130, 138, 139, 141, 177, 183
 descriptionaccess 183
 descriptionplural . 68, 75, 76, 183
 descriptionpluralaccess 183
 first 9, 68, 89, 92–
 94, 99, 112, 136, 151, 178, 183
 firstaccess 183
 firstplural 9, 68, 72, 76,
 89, 93, 95, 99, 113, 178, 183
 firstpluralaccess 183
 format 91
 long .. 71, 99, 130, 136, 177, 183
 longaccess 183
 longplural .. 71, 76, 99, 130, 183
 longpluralaccess 183
 name . 51, 52, 54, 67–70, 75,
 77, 95, 110, 111, 115, 136,
 138, 139, 145, 169, 183, 186
 nonumberlist 70
 parent 67, 68, 77
 plural 68, 72, 78,
 89, 93, 94, 99, 112, 178, 183
 pluralaccess 183
 prefix 178–181
 prefixfirst 178, 179, 181
 prefixfirstplural 178–181
 prefixplural 178–181
 printnoidxglossary 118
 see . 11, 51, 70, 71, 90, 107–109
 short . 71, 99, 130, 136, 177, 183
 shortaccess 183
 shortplural .. 71, 76, 99, 130, 183
 shortpluralaccess 183

sort 10, 51,
 52, 68–71, 75, 76, 78, 118,
 136, 138, 139, 169, 186, 188
 symbol 68,
 75, 95, 100, 101, 145, 177, 183
 symbolaccess 183
 symbolplural 68, 75, 183
 symbolpluralaccess 183
 text 68, 89, 92–
 94, 99, 112, 136, 151, 178, 183
 textaccess 183
 type 70, 79, 130
 user1 6, 70, 76, 96, 174
 user2 70, 76, 174
 user3 70, 76
 user4 70, 76
 user5 70, 76
 user6 6, 70, 76, 174
 \newglossarystyle
 156, 168, 169, 173
 \newline 67, 156
 \newterm 61, 108
 ngerman package 29, 121
 \nohyperpage 84
 \noist 24,
 65, 84, 85, 121–124, 126, 127
 Non-Latin Alphabet 9
 non-Latin character 8,
 9, 10, 25, 26, 28, 29, 32, 67, 71
 \nopostdesc
 61, 67, 77, 78, 156, 177
 number list 10, 21, 26, 32,
 34, 45, 51, 65, 70, 71, 76,
 78, 84–87, 105, 109, 116,
 117, 123, 126, 128, 157–
 160, 162–164, 167, 170, 172
 \numberline 45

O

\oldacronym 149, 149

P

package options:
 acronym 31, 37, 38, 41, 47, 56,
 57, 62, 80, 106, 128, 129, 148
 true 41, 57
 acronymlists .. 57, 98, 129, 130
 acronyms 41, 57
 compatible-2.07 62, 65

Index

- compatible-3.07 56, 62, 98
- counter 51, 65, 84, 123, 125
 - page 51
- counterwithin . . . 49, 154, 170, 172
- description 58–60
- dua 58, 60
- entrycounter 48, 49, 154, 170, 172
 - false 48
 - true 49
- footnote 58, 59
- hyperfirst 44, 103
 - false 44, 102, 139, 186
 - true 44
- index 41, 61, 62, 129
- makeindex 41, 55, 62
- nogroupskip 18, 51, 156, 170, 173
 - false 51
- nohypertypes . . . 44, 81, 88, 89, 91
 - index 62
- nolist 50, 62, 157
- nolong 50, 62, 154, 158
- nomain 41, 56, 57, 60–62, 128, 188
- nonumberlist
 - 10, 51, 70, 84, 105, 171
- nopostdot 51, 156
 - false 51
- noredefwarn 41
- nostyles
 - 50, 62, 154, 157, 158, 161, 165
- nosuper 50, 62, 154, 161
- notranslate 44, 62
- notree 50, 62, 165
- nowarn 41, 81
- numberedsection . . 47, 118, 119
 - autolabel 47, 48
 - false 47
 - nameref 48
 - no label 47
- numberline 45
- numbers 41, 61, 129
- order 55, 118
 - letter 14, 23, 35, 55
 - word 23, 35, 55
- sanitizesort 16, 42, 52
 - false 12, 42, 52, 70
 - true 12, 42, 69–71, 118
- savenumberlist 45, 116
 - false 45
- savewrites 42, 43
 - false 42
- section 45, 119
- seeautonumberlist . . . 51, 71, 109
- shortcuts 58, 134
- smallcaps 58–60, 63, 186
- smaller 58–60, 186, 187
- sort 51, 186, 188
 - def 51, 52, 68, 78, 186
 - standard 51–53
 - use 51, 52, 68, 78, 186
- style . . . 49, 50, 118, 154, 160, 163
 - list 49
- subentrycounter
 - . . . 49, 76, 78, 154, 171, 172
 - false 49
- symbols 41, 60, 129
- toc 45, 118
- translate 43, 44, 62
 - babel 28, 29, 32, 44, 187
 - false 28, 32, 43, 44
 - true 43, 44
- ucfirst 47
- ucmark 46
 - false 46
 - true 46
- xindy . . . 13, 25, 28, 35, 36, 38,
 - 55, 56, 62, 63, 121, 123, 127
- xindygloss 56, 62
- xindynoglsnumbers 56, 62
- page (counter) 125
- \pagelistname 31
- pdflatex 2, 88
- \PGLS 179
- \Pgls 179
- \pgls 179
- \PGLSpl 180
- \Pglspl 180
- \pglspl 179
- pod2man 36
- polyglossia package . . . 28, 32, 43, 44
- \printacronyms 56, 148
- \printglossaries
 - 117, 148, 171, 176, 188
- \printglossary
 - 50, 56, 60–62, 117,
 - 148, 154, 156, 171, 176, 188
- \printglossary options
 - nonumberlist 118
 - numberedsection 118

Index

- style 50, 118, 154, 156
- title 118
- toctitle 118
- type 118
- \printindex 61
- \printnoidxglossaries .
..... 117, 148
- \printnoidxglossary ...
..... 51, 53, 55,
56, 60–62, 117, 148, 154, 156
- \printnoidxglossary op-
tions
sort 51, 53, 55
- \printnumbers 61
- \printsymbols 60
- \provideglossaryentry .
..... 66, 80
- R**
- resize package 59, 137
- \Roman 124
- S**
- sanitize 10, 42, 52, 110, 115
- scrwfile package 43
- \section* 48, 118
- \seename 8, 108, 109
- \SetAcronymLists 57
- \setacronymstyle
..... 58, 130, 135, 141
- \setAlphaCompositor ... 126
- \setCompositor 126
- \setentrycounter 171
- \setglossarypreamble 49, 119
- \setglossarysection 46, 119
- \setglossarystyle
.. 50, 154, 156, 166, 167, 173
- \setStyleFile 37, 38, 65
- \setupglossaries 62
- standard L^AT_EX extended Latin
character 10, 71
- \subglossentry 171
- supertabular (environment)
..... 161, 163
- supertabular package . 50, 161, 163
- \symbolname 31
- T**
- TeX4HT 188
- \textbf 90
- textcase package 46
- \textrm 123
- \textsc 137, 142, 145, 186
- \textsmaller 59, 137, 187
- \textulc 142
- \textup 142
- \the 141
- theglossary (environment)
..... 168, 168, 172
- \thepage 125
- translator package
..... 28–30, 32, 43, 44, 129
- W**
- \writel8 43
- X**
- xindy 9, 10, 13–15,
24, 25, 28, 32–39, 43, 48,
52, 55, 56, 64, 70, 71, 84,
90, 91, 116, 117, 121–125,
127, 128, 165, 169, 186–188
- xkeyval package 17, 185
- \xmakefirstuc 8
- \xspace 149
- xspace package 149, 150